Composition Sequences and Semigroups of Möbius Transformations

Thesis

How to cite:

For guidance on citations see FAQs.

© 2016 The Author

Version: [not recorded]

Link(s) to article on publisher’s website:
http://dx.doi.org/doi:10.21954/ou.ro.0000bd1f

Copyright and Moral Rights for the articles on this site are retained by the individual authors and/or other copyright owners. For more information on Open Research Online’s data policy on reuse of materials please consult the policies page.

oro.open.ac.uk
Composition sequences and semigroups of Möbius transformations

Matthew Jacques

MMath (Sheffield)
MSc (Open)

A thesis submitted to
School of Mathematics and Statistics
The Open University

for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy

January 23, 2017
Declaration

I confirm that the material contained in this thesis is the result of independent work, except where explicitly stated, and with the exception of Chapters 2, 3 and 5, which are the result of joint work with Ian Short. None of it has previously been submitted for a degree or other qualification to this or any other university or institution.

Matthew Jacques

January 23, 2017
Abstract

Motivated by the theory of Kleinian groups and by the theory of continued fractions, we study semigroups of Möbius transformations. Like Kleinian groups, semigroups have limit sets, and indeed each semigroup is equipped with two limit sets. We find that limit sets have an internal structure with features similar to the limit sets of Kleinian groups and the Julia sets of iterates of analytic functions. We introduce the notion of a semidiscrete semigroup, and find that this property is akin to the discreteness property for groups.

We study semigroups of Möbius transformations that fix the unit disc, and lay the foundations of a theory for such semigroups. We consider the composition sequences generated by such semigroups, and show that every such composition sequence converges pointwise in the open unit disc to a constant function whenever the identity element does not lie in the closure of the semigroup. We establish various results that have counterparts in the theory of Fuchsian groups. For example we show that aside from a certain exceptional family, any finitely-generated semigroup $S$ is semidiscrete precisely when every two-generator semigroup contained in $S$ is semidiscrete. We show that the limit sets of a nonelementary finitely-generated semidiscrete semigroup are equal (and non-trivial) precisely when the semigroup is a group. We classify two-generator semidiscrete semigroups, and give the basis for an algorithm that decides whether any two-generator semigroup is semidiscrete.

We go on to study finitely-generated semigroups of Möbius transformations that map the unit disc strictly within itself. Every composition sequence generated by such a semigroup converges pointwise in the open unit disc to a constant function. We give conditions that determine whether this convergence is uniform on the closed unit disc, and show that the cases where convergence is not uniform are very special indeed.
Acknowledgements

Firstly I would like to thank my supervisor, Ian Short, for his extensive help, encouragement, and boundless patience. I am very grateful for his support, without which I would have made little progress – thank you! I would also like to thank Phil Rippon, my second supervisor, for his generous support and advice. Everyone in the mathematics department has been extremely welcoming, and so I thank them, most especially everyone in the complex analysis group. I give particular thanks to the other Open University PhD students for their friendship and support, especially David Bevan, David Martí-Pete, Grahame, Mairi, Rosie and Vasso.

I would like to thank both examiners, Edward Crane (external) and David Brannan (internal), whose careful and extensive feedback on a previous version of this thesis has led to an immensely improved final version.

I also give a huge thank-you to my mother and brother for their continuous support. Finally, I would like to thank my partner, Anne-Marie, who encouraged me back into maths and has endured much while I have pursued it. This thesis is dedicated to her.
Contents

Declaration i

Abstract iii

Acknowledgements v

Chapter 1. Introduction and background 1

1. Structure of this thesis 1
2. Continued fractions and composition sequences 2
3. The Möbius group and hyperbolic geometry 4
4. Sequences of Möbius transformations 9
5. Semigroups and Limit sets 10

Chapter 2. On Möbius semigroups 19

1. The group and inverse free parts of a semigroup 19
2. Semidiscrete semigroups 20
3. Schottky semigroups 21
4. Composition sequences 24
5. Covering regions 26
6. Constructing new semidiscrete semigroups from old 35

Chapter 3. Semigroups that fix the unit circle 39

1. A closer look at elementary subsemigroups of Aut(\mathbb{H}^2) 43
2. Proof of Theorem 3.1 46
3. Two-generator semigroups 49
4. Proof of Theorem 3.2 70
5. Classification of finitely-generated semigroups and proof of Theorem 3.3 78
6. Intersecting limit sets

Chapter 4. Limit sets
1. Introduction
2. On the structure of the limit sets
3. On semigroups with disjoint limit sets

Chapter 5. Self-maps of the disc
1. Introduction
2. Eventually tangent sequences of discs
3. Necessary and sufficient conditions for limit-disc type
4. Hausdorff dimension of the set of composition sequences of limit-disc type
5. Complete tangency graph
6. Convergence of composition sequences

Chapter 6. Coding limit sets

Bibliography
CHAPTER 1

Introduction and background

1. Structure of this thesis

In this first chapter we introduce the preliminary tools and ideas used in subsequent chapters, as well as giving some historical background. We shall begin by giving the classical definition of a continued fraction, which we shall later regard as a composition sequence of Möbius transformations, before giving a brief overview of hyperbolic geometry. We then introduce semigroups of Möbius transformations and discuss recent work of Fried, Marotta and Stankewitz [15].

Chapter 2 builds on the theory of semigroups of Möbius transformations presented in [15]. In Chapter 3 we study semidiscrrete semigroups of Möbius transformations that fix the unit disc. These can be regarded as semigroup analogues of Fuchsian groups. The material in Chapters 2 and 3 is used in a joint paper [21] with Ian Short. Theorem 2.18 in Chapter 2 is due to Edward Crane. In Chapter 4 we study the limit sets of semigroups in detail. In Chapter 5 we turn to composition sequences generated by finitely many Möbius transformations that each map the unit disc strictly within itself. The material in this chapter is used in a joint paper [22] with Ian Short. Finally in Chapter 6 we consider what can be regarded as a generalisation of the continued fraction expansion of a real number. The work contained in Chapter 6 is in progress.

Throughout we shall freely assume the axiom of choice, which is used in, for example, König’s lemma and the Baire category theorem.
2. Continued fractions and composition sequences

We denote the positive integers by \( \mathbb{N} \). A continued fraction is a formal expression

\[
K(a_n|b_n) = \frac{a_1}{b_1 + \frac{a_2}{b_2 + \cdots}}
\]

where \( a_n \) and \( b_n \) are infinite sequences of complex numbers and \( a_n \neq 0 \) for each \( n \in \mathbb{N} \).

We say that the continued fraction converges if the sequence with \( n \)th term

\[
\frac{a_1}{b_1 + \frac{a_2}{b_2 + \cdots + \frac{a_n}{b_n}}}
\]

converges in the extended complex plane \( \overline{\mathbb{C}} = \mathbb{C} \cup \{\infty\} \). We shall always consider continued fractions as generated by infinite (rather than finite) sequences \( a_n \) and \( b_n \); in particular we are excluding terminating continued fractions.

For a general choice of \( a_n \) and \( b_n \) the continued fraction may not converge. It is well known that if \( a_n = 1 \) and \( b_n \in \mathbb{N} \) for all \( n \), then the continued fraction does converge. Indeed, there is a one-to-one correspondence between each sequence \( b_1, b_2, \ldots \) in \( \mathbb{N} \) and the irrational numbers contained in \( (0, 1) \) via the function that maps \( b_n \) to the limit of the sequence

\[
\frac{1}{b_1 + \frac{1}{\cdots + \frac{1}{b_n}}}
\]

We equip the open unit ball \( \mathbb{B}^3 = \{(x, y, z) \in \mathbb{R}^3 \mid x^2 + y^2 + z^2 < 1\} \) with the hyperbolic metric, denoted \( \rho \), which is induced by the line element

\[
ds^2 = \frac{4|dx|^2}{(1-|x|^2)^2},
\]

where \( x \) is a point in \( \mathbb{R}^3 \). This means that, for points \( x \) and \( y \) in \( \mathbb{B}^3 \), the distance \( \rho(x, y) \) is given by the infimum of the integral of this metric along all curves between \( x \) and \( y \).
With respect to $\rho$ there is a unique geodesic between any two points in $\mathbb{B}^3$. Every such geodesic is an arc of a Euclidean circle orthogonal to the unit sphere, $\mathbb{S}^2$.

We define the ideal boundary of $(\mathbb{B}^3, \rho)$ as follows. A geodesic half-ray is a map $\gamma : [0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{B}^3$ such that $\rho(\gamma(0), \gamma(t)) = t$ for all $t \in [0, \infty)$. We define a relation $\sim$ on the set of geodesic half-rays as follows. If $\gamma_1$ and $\gamma_2$ are geodesic half-rays, then $\gamma_1 \sim \gamma_2$ if there is a constant $C > 0$ such that $\rho(\gamma_1(t), \gamma_2(t)) < C$ for all $t$. It is easy to check that $\sim$ is an equivalence relation. The ideal boundary of $(\mathbb{B}^3, \rho)$ is defined to be the set of equivalence classes of geodesic half-rays, and can be identified with the unit sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$.

We consider the group $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ of Möbius transformations, defined to be the orientation-preserving isometries of $(\mathbb{B}^3, \rho)$. The action of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ on $\mathbb{B}^3$ extends to a conformal action on its boundary $\mathbb{S}^2$, which, by stereographic projection, we identify with the extended complex plane $\mathbb{C}$, as we explain shortly. It is well known that $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ is exactly the group of conformal automorphisms of $\mathbb{C}$. Moreover, when regarded as functions acting on the complex plane, these Möbius transformations are exactly those maps of the form

$$z \mapsto \frac{az + b}{cz + d},$$

where $a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{C}$ and $ad - bc = 1$.

Given a collection $\mathcal{F}$ of Möbius transformations, we define a composition sequence generated by $\mathcal{F}$ to be a sequence

$$F_n = f_1 \cdots f_n,$$

where each $f_i \in \mathcal{F}$. If $f_n(z) = \frac{a_n}{z + b_n}$ for each $n$, then the continued fraction $K(a_n|b_n)$ converges exactly when $F_n(0)$ converges. This is the connection between composition sequences of Möbius transformations and continued fractions. In this thesis we use hyperbolic geometry, and other methods, to study composition sequences in detail. We are particularly interested in the relationship between the collection of composition sequences generated by some subset $\mathcal{F}$ of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ and the semigroup generated by $\mathcal{F}$. 
Regarding continued fractions as composition sequences of M"{o}bius transformations is useful in at least two ways. Firstly, the tools of hyperbolic geometry can be applied directly to the study of continued fractions, which can allow for the replacement of opaque algebraic arguments with more concise geometric alternatives. Secondly, composition sequences give a natural way of generalising continued fractions. For example, one can also consider composition sequences of M"{o}bius transformations in higher dimensions. In the sequel we work with M"{o}bius transformations acting on $B^3$ and $S^2$, although many of our results also hold for M"{o}bius transformations acting on $B^n$ and $S^{n-1}$. Following Aebischer’s 1990 paper \[1\], several authors, notably Beardon, Hockman and Short (see for example \[4\]), have engaged in a programme of interpreting and extending classical results from continued fraction theory using the tools of hyperbolic geometry.

3. The M"{o}bius group and hyperbolic geometry

We have already introduced $\text{Aut}(B^3)$ as the group of orientation-preserving isometries of $(B^3, \rho)$; however, we now describe a more general collection of M"{o}bius transformations. We let $\mathbb{R}^3 = \mathbb{R}^3 \cup \{\infty\}$ be the one-point compactification of $\mathbb{R}^3$. We denote the group of conformal homeomorphisms of $\mathbb{R}^3$ by $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{R}^3)$. The group $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{R}^3)$ is the set of orientation-preserving maps in the group that is generated by reflections in planes and inversions in spheres acting on $\mathbb{R}^3$. The set $\text{Aut}(B^3)$ is the subgroup of elements in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{R}^3)$ that fix $B^3$ setwise. We denote the distinguished point $(0,0,0)$ in the unit ball by $0$.

Occasionally it will be convenient to use a different model of hyperbolic space. We define upper half-space by $H^3 = \{(x,y,t) \mid (x,y) \in \mathbb{R}^2, t > 0\}$ and denote the distinguished point $(0,0,1) \in H^3$ by $j$. The hyperbolic metric on $H^3$, which we shall also denote by $\rho$, is induced by the line element

$$ds^2 = \frac{|dx|^2}{t^2},$$

where $x$ is a point in $H^3$. Equipped with this metric, we call $H^3$ the upper half-space model. Exploiting the same construction used to define the ideal boundary of $(B^3, \rho)$, we find that $(H^3, \rho)$ has a well-defined ideal boundary that we identify with $\overline{\mathbb{C}}$. Choose an
element $\phi \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{R}^3)$ that maps $\mathbb{B}^3$ onto $\mathbb{H}^3$, and maps the points $0,(0,0,1)$ and $(0,0,-1)$ to $j, \infty$ and $0$ respectively. Upon conjugating $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ by $\phi$, we obtain the subgroup of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{R}^3)$ that fixes $\mathbb{H}^3$. This is exactly the group of orientation-preserving isometries of $(\mathbb{H}^3, \rho)$.

We shall routinely switch between the upper half-space and unit ball models of hyperbolic space, and do not make a notational distinction between a Möbius transformation acting on one model and its corresponding conjugate acting on another. The upper half-space model is usually preferred in an argument that considers a distinguished point on the ideal boundary, which by conjugation we can take to be $\infty$. On the other hand if our argument involves a distinguished point in hyperbolic space, the unit ball model is useful so that, by conjugation, this distinguished point may be taken to be $0$.

The above discussion is dimensionless, although the number of conditions needed to identify a unique Möbius transformation from $\mathbb{H}^n$ onto $\mathbb{B}^n$ depends on $n$. In two dimensions, we have the unit disc instead of the unit ball, which, when thought of as a subset of the complex plane, carries the hyperbolic metric (also denoted $\rho$) given by the line element

$$ds^2 = \frac{4|dz|^2}{(1-|z|^2)^2},$$

where $z \in \mathbb{D}$. We call $(\mathbb{D}, \rho)$ the unit disc model of the hyperbolic plane. The group of Möbius transformations acting on $\mathbb{C}$ that fix the unit disc is denoted $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$, and is exactly the group of orientation-preserving isometries of $(\mathbb{D}, \rho)$. Choose a Möbius transformation $\phi$ that maps the unit disc onto the upper half-plane $\mathbb{H}^2 = \{(x,y) \mid y > 0\}$, and maps $0$ to $i$. The map $\phi$ transfers the hyperbolic metric from the unit disc onto the upper half-plane. In this model the hyperbolic metric is given by the line element

$$ds^2 = \frac{|dz|^2}{\text{Im}(z)^2},$$

where $z \in \mathbb{H}^2$. By conjugating $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ by $\phi$ we obtain the collection of orientation-preserving isometries of the upper half-plane.
Many of our results hold for Möbius transformations acting in higher dimensions. However, for clarity of exposition we shall always work with Möbius transformations acting on at most three dimensions. If however a result is stated to hold for Möbius transformations belonging to Aut($\mathbb{D}$) (or Aut($\mathbb{H}^2$)), then we only claim the proof holds for these cases. Many results in Chapter 3 are of this type.

We let $\chi$ denote the chordal metric on the closed unit ball, which is defined as the restriction of the Euclidean metric on $\mathbb{R}^3$ to the closed unit ball. The unit sphere $S^2$ can be identified with $\mathbb{C}$ by the well-known stereographic projection map, which we now describe. A point $x \in S^2 \setminus \{(0,0,1)\}$ is first mapped to $(x,y,0) \in \mathbb{R}^3$, defined as the point where the plane $\{(x,y,z) \in \mathbb{R}^3 \mid z = 0\}$ intersects the infinite line in $\mathbb{R}^3$ that passes though $x$ and $(0,0,1)$. The stereographic projection map sends $x \in S^2 \setminus \{(0,0,1)\}$ to $x + iy \in \mathbb{C}$, while the point $(0,0,1)$ is mapped to $\infty \in \mathbb{C}$. If $z$ and $w$ are points in $\mathbb{C}$ then $\chi(z,w)$ is given by

\[ \chi(z,w) = \frac{2|z-w|}{\sqrt{1+|z|^2}\sqrt{1+|w|^2}}, \]

where it is understood that the appropriate limit is taken if one or both of $z$ or $w$ equals $\infty$. We now describe a complete metric on the group Aut($\mathbb{B}^3$) itself. For $f,g \in$ Aut($\mathbb{B}^3$), the metric of uniform convergence is given by

\[ \sigma(f,g) = \sup_{z \in \mathbb{B}^3} |f(z) - g(z)|. \]

Directly from its definition, $\sigma$ can be seen to be right invariant, that is

\[ \sigma(fh,gh) = \sigma(f,g) \]

for all $f,g,h \in$ Aut($\mathbb{B}^3$). In fact Aut($\mathbb{B}^3$) is a topological group [4, Theorem 3.1], that is, the maps $f \mapsto f^{-1}$ from Aut($\mathbb{B}^3$) to itself, and $(f,g) \mapsto fg$ from Aut($\mathbb{B}^3$) $\times$ Aut($\mathbb{B}^3$) to Aut($\mathbb{B}^3$) are both continuous.

The map $\Phi$ given by

\[ \Phi \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = \left( z \mapsto \frac{az + b}{cz + d} \right) \]
from $\text{SL}(2, \mathbb{C})$ onto $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ is a surjective group homomorphism with kernel $\{I, -I\}$, where $I$ is the identity matrix. This implies that $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ is isomorphic to $\text{PSL}(2, \mathbb{C}) = \text{SL}(2, \mathbb{C})/\{I, -I\}$.

For any Möbius transformation $f$ the square of the trace of both representations of $f$ in $\text{SL}(2, \mathbb{C})$ is the same. This implies that the function $\text{tr}^2 : \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3) \to \mathbb{C}$ given by $\text{tr}^2(f) = (\text{trace}(F))^2$, where $F \in \text{SL}(2, \mathbb{C})$ satisfies $\Phi(F) = f$, is well defined. Indeed, $\Phi$ is also an open, continuous and surjective map [4 Theorem 3.2].

The function $\text{tr}^2$ is important because two elements $f, g \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ are conjugate if and only if $\text{tr}^2(f) = \text{tr}^2(g)$ (see [4 Theorem 3.10]). We let $I$ denote the identity map. A Möbius transformation $f$ not equal to the identity falls into one of the following three classes:

- The map $f$ is parabolic if $f$ is conjugate to the map $z \mapsto z + 1$. In this case $\text{tr}^2(f) = 4$ and $f$ has exactly one fixed point in $\mathbb{C}$ with multiplier equal to 1.
- The map $f$ is loxodromic if $f$ is conjugate to a map of the form $z \mapsto \lambda z$ where $|\lambda| \neq 1$. In this case $\text{tr}^2(f) \in \mathbb{C} \setminus [0, 4]$ and $f$ has exactly two fixed points in $\mathbb{C}$, one attracting and one repelling.
- The map $f$ is elliptic if $f$ is conjugate to a map of the form $z \mapsto \lambda z$ where $|\lambda| = 1$ and $\lambda \neq 1$. In this case $\text{tr}^2(f) \in [0, 4)$ and $f$ has exactly two fixed points in $\mathbb{C}$, each with multiplier of modulus 1.

It is useful to observe that the function $\text{tr}^2$ is continuous. Since $\Phi$ is an open map, it follows that the collection of loxodromic elements is an open subset of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$.

If a Möbius transformation $g$ satisfies $g^n = I$ for some positive integer $n$, then we call the least such $n$ the order of $g$, and write $n = \text{order}(g)$. If there is no such positive integer $n$, then we say that $g$ has infinite order. By the characterisation of Möbius transformations given above, it is clear that only elliptic transformations conjugate to rational rotations
have finite order. All other nontrivial Möbius transformations have infinite order. Let us now give a geometric description of the action of each type of Möbius transformation on hyperbolic space. Each elliptic and loxodromic transformation has two fixed points on the ideal boundary. The hyperbolic geodesic landing at these fixed points is called the axis of the transformation. Each elliptic transformation fixes its axis pointwise. The action of the elliptic transformation is to perform a nontrivial hyperbolic rotation around its axis. The angle of rotation, \( \theta \), of an elliptic transformation \( f \) is related to \( \text{tr}^2(f) \) by the equation \( \text{tr}^2(f) = 4 \cos^2(\theta/2) \). A loxodromic transformation \( f \) has one attracting fixed point and one repelling fixed point, which we shall denote by \( \alpha_f \) and \( \beta_f \) respectively. The map \( f \) first translates each point \( x \) in \( \mathbb{H}^3 \) by some nonzero hyperbolic distance, called the translation length of \( f \), parallel to its axis and in the direction of the attracting fixed point of \( f \), before performing a (possibly trivial) hyperbolic rotation about its axis. A loxodromic transformation fixes its axis setwise. The action of a parabolic transformation is very different. A horoball is a Euclidean sphere internally tangent (and not equal) to the unit sphere, and we call the point of tangency the base point of the horoball. A parabolic transformation fixes any horoball based at its fixed point setwise. The action of a parabolic element \( f \) is best visualised by thinking in the upper half-space model, and conjugating \( f \) to the map \( z \mapsto z + 1 \), which fixes the horoball \( \{(x, y, t) \mid (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \cup \{\infty\}\} \) for any given \( t > 0 \).

To understand the action of a Möbius transformation on the ideal boundary, the notion of isometric discs can be helpful. First, we define the chordal derivative of a Möbius transformation \( f \) at \( w \in \mathbb{C} \) to be the quantity

\[
\lim_{z \to w} \frac{\chi(f(z), f(w))}{\chi(z, w)}.
\]

For any Möbius transformation \( f \), its isometric disc, which we shall denote by \( I^+(f) \), is the open chordal disc contained in \( \mathbb{C} \) where the chordal derivative of \( f \) is greater than 1. We let \( I^-(f) \) denote the isometric disc of \( f^{-1} \). If \( f \) is loxodromic then \( \alpha_f \in I^-(f) \) and \( \beta_f \in I^+(f) \). Both isometric discs have chordal radius \( 1/\sinh[\rho(f(0), 0)] \). The transformation \( f \) maps the interior of the complement of \( I^+(f) \) onto \( I^-(f) \). See [29, Chapter 1] for more details on the action of Möbius transformations on hyperbolic space and the
properties of isometric discs.

**Definition** A *Kleinian group* is a discrete group of Möbius transformations. A *Fuchsian group* is a Kleinian group whose elements all fix some non-trivial chordal disc in $\overline{\mathbb{C}}$. Equivalently, a Fuchsian group is a Kleinian group that is conjugate to a discrete subgroup of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ by a Möbius transformation.

We recall the following definition of a Schottky group, which may be found in [29, Section 2.7].

**Definition** Let $\{C_1, C'_1, \ldots, C_k, C'_k\}$ be $k$ pairs of circles in $\overline{\mathbb{C}}$, whose interiors are pairwise disjoint. Suppose that for each $n = 1, \ldots, k$ the Möbius transformation $g_n$ maps $C_n$ onto $C'_n$, and maps the interior of $C_n$ onto the exterior of $C'_n$. The group generated by $\{g_1, \ldots, g_n\}$ is a discrete group. We say that a group of Möbius transformations is a *Schottky group* if it is conjugate to a group constructed as above.

For some authors the definition given above is that of a *classical* Schottky group, and they give a more general definition of a Schottky group, where the circles featured in the construction are replaced by Jordan curves.

Schottky groups are examples of *free groups*. A free group is a group that has no non-trivial relations. We shall also need the related but slightly different notion of a *free semigroup*. We shall say that a semigroup $S$ generated by a set $\mathcal{F}$ of Möbius transformations is free if each element in $S$ can be written uniquely as a finite composition of elements in $\mathcal{F} \setminus \{I\}$.

### 4. Sequences of Möbius transformations

A sequence of Möbius transformations $g_n$ is said to *converge ideally* if for any point $\zeta \in \mathbb{B}^3$ the sequence $g_n(\zeta)$ converges in the Euclidean metric to a point on the ideal boundary. This definition is independent of the choice of point $\zeta$ in hyperbolic space. We say ‘converges ideally’ rather than simply ‘converges’, as the latter term is reserved to describe the convergence of $g_n$ as a sequence inside the Möbius group, that is, if $g_n$ converges uniformly to a Möbius transformation. Ideal convergence was introduced to the theory of continued
fractions by Lorentzen (formerly known as Jacobson) in [26], although there the term general convergence was used, and it was defined purely in terms of the action of Aut(B^3) on \mathbb{C}.

The notion of an ideally converging sequence of Möbius transformations will play an important role in this thesis. It is useful to define another, weaker property on sequences of Möbius transformations. We say that a sequence \( g_n \) in Aut(B^3) is escaping if for any \( \zeta \in B^3 \) the sequence \( g_n(\zeta) \) accumulates only on the boundary of hyperbolic space, with respect to the Euclidean metric on \( B^3 \). If a sequence \( g_n \) is escaping then we call the sequence an escaping sequence. Again, since each \( g_n \) is a hyperbolic isometry, this definition is independent of the choice of \( \zeta \). In the continued fractions literature, what we call escaping sequences are sometimes called ‘restrained sequences’. These were first defined (see [28], Definition 2.6) by Lorentzen and Thron purely in terms of the action of a sequence on \( \mathbb{C} \).

5. Semigroups and Limit sets

We define a semigroup of Möbius transformations, or more briefly, a semigroup, to be a set of Möbius transformations that is closed under composition. Note that the identity element, which we shall denote by \( I \), need not lie in a semigroup.

Throughout the thesis, we write \( A \subseteq B \) to mean that \( A \) is contained in or equal to \( B \). If \( A \) is contained in but not equal to \( B \), then we shall write \( A \subsetneq B \). For any collection \( X \subseteq \text{Aut}(B^3) \) of Möbius transformations and any \( \zeta \in B^3 \), we describe the set of points \( X^{-1}(\zeta) = \{ g^{-1}(\zeta) \mid g \in X \} \) as the backward orbit of \( \zeta \) under \( X \). Similarly, \( X(\zeta) = \{ g(\zeta) \mid g \in X \} \) is the forward orbit of \( \zeta \) under \( X \), or the \( X \)-orbit of \( \zeta \). We now introduce one of the central ideas within this thesis.

**Definition** Choose any point \( \zeta \in B^3 \). We define the backward limit set of \( X \) as

\[
\Lambda^-(X) = \overline{X^{-1}(\zeta)} \cap S^2,
\]

where the closure is with respect to the Euclidean metric. Similarly we define the forward limit set of \( X \) as

\[
\Lambda^+(X) = \overline{X(\zeta)} \cap S^2.
\]
These definitions are independent of the choice of $\zeta$ in hyperbolic space. Both limit sets are closed subsets of $S^2$. If $g_n$ is a sequence then we shall refer to $\Lambda^-(\{g_n \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\})$ as the backward limit set of $g_n$, and abbreviate this simply to $\Lambda^-(g_n)$. Similarly we write $\Lambda^+(g_n)$ for $\Lambda^+(\{g_n \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\})$ and call this the forward limit set of $g_n$. When $X$ is a Kleinian group, the forward and backward limit sets coincide with the limit set of the Kleinian group. A good introduction to Kleinian groups and the properties of their limit sets can be found in [3] or [29]. We shall be interested in limit sets where $X$ is either a semigroup, or a sequence of Möbius transformations. Indeed, the limit sets of a semigroup will be of great interest to us, and we shall study them in detail. Limit sets of semigroups were studied by Fried, Marotta and Stankewitz in [15], and we shall develop their ideas. Limit sets of sequences are important because of the following theorem due to Aebischer [1], which, for a sequence of Möbius transformations $g_n$, connects convergence of the sequence $g_n(z)$ where $z$ is a point on the ideal boundary, to convergence of $g_n(\zeta)$ where $\zeta$ is a point in hyperbolic space. See also [4], Theorem 9.6.

**Theorem 1.1.** Suppose that $g_n$ is an escaping sequence of Möbius transformations. Then $\chi(g_n(z), g_n(0)) \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$ for all $z \in \mathbb{B}^3 \setminus \Lambda^-(g_n)$. In fact convergence is locally uniform in $\mathbb{B}^3 \setminus \Lambda^-(g_n)$, and $\mathbb{B}^3 \setminus \Lambda^-(g_n)$ is the largest open set with this property.

In fact, it is shown in [1] that for any $X$ the complement of $\Lambda^-(X)$ is the largest open subset of the ideal boundary upon which $X$ is a normal family.

We now define two important subsets of the backward and forward limit sets, which have familiar counterparts in the theory of Kleinian groups. Suppose that $X$ is a set of Möbius transformations and let $z \in S^2$. Choose any hyperbolic geodesic segment $\gamma$ that has one end point $z$ and the other end point in $\mathbb{B}^3$, and let $\zeta \in \mathbb{B}^3$. Then $z$ is a **forward conical limit point** of $X$ if there is sequence $g_n$ in $X$, and a positive constant $M$, such that

(i) $g_n(\zeta) \to z$ as $n \to \infty$;

(ii) $\rho(\gamma, g_n(\zeta)) < M$ for all $n$.

For such a sequence $g_n$, we shall say that $g_n(\zeta)$ **converges conically** to $z$. These definitions do not depend on the choice of $\gamma$ or $\zeta$. The **forward conical limit set** $\Lambda^+_c(X)$ of $X$ is the collection of all forward conical limit points of $X$. A **backward conical limit point** of $X$ is defined to be a forward conical limit point of $X^{-1}$, and the **backward conical limit set**
\( \Lambda_c^{-}(X) \) of \( X \) is defined to be \( \Lambda_c^{\pm}(X^{-1}) \).

We also define the **forward horospherical limit set** \( \Lambda^+_h(X) \) of \( X \) to consist of those points \( z \) in \( \Lambda^+(X) \) such that, for any point \( \zeta \) in \( \mathbb{B}^3 \), the orbit \( X(\zeta) \) meets every horoball based at \( z \). The **backward horospherical limit set** \( \Lambda^-_h(X) \) of \( X \) is defined as \( \Lambda^+_h(X^{-1}) \). Clearly we have the inclusions

\[
\Lambda^+_c \subseteq \Lambda^+_h \subseteq \Lambda^+ \quad \text{and} \quad \Lambda^-_c \subseteq \Lambda^-_h \subseteq \Lambda^-.
\]

Here we have omitted mention of \( X \), as we often will do for brevity. Conical and horospherical limit sets have important roles in the theory of Kleinian groups, so it is no surprise that the sets introduced here play an important part in the study of semigroups.

Given a semigroup \( S \), we say that a subset \( Y \) of \( \mathbb{B}^3 \) is **forward invariant** (with respect to \( S \)) if for each element \( g \) of \( S \), \( g(Y) \subseteq Y \). Similarly we shall say that \( Y \subseteq \mathbb{B}^3 \) is **backward invariant** if for each element \( g \) of \( S \), \( g^{-1}(Y) \subseteq Y \). Equivalently, \( Y \) is backward invariant with respect to \( S \) if \( Y \) is forward invariant with respect to \( S^{-1} \). In [15] the authors make the important observation that \( \Lambda^+_c(S) \) is forward invariant and \( \Lambda^-_c(S) \) is backward invariant. Indeed, the conical and horospherical limit sets behave in the same way: \( \Lambda^+_c(S) \) and \( \Lambda^+_h(S) \) are forward invariant, while \( \Lambda^-_c(S) \) and \( \Lambda^-_h(S) \) are backward invariant, which one can verify directly from the definitions.

The backward conical limit set of sequences features in the theory of continued fractions because of the following theorem of Aebischer [1, Theorem 5.2].

**Theorem 1.2.** Let \( g_n \) be an escaping sequence, and let \( \zeta \in \mathbb{B}^3 \). Then, for each point \( z \) in \( \mathbb{S}^2 \), we have \( \chi(g_n(\zeta), g_n(z)) \to 0 \) as \( n \to \infty \) if and only if \( z \notin \Lambda^-_c(g_n) \).

It is straightforward to prove this theorem using hyperbolic geometry; see, for example, [11, Proposition 3.3]. We also have the following lemma, proven in [11, Lemma 3.4].

**Lemma 1.3.** Suppose that \( w \) is a backward conical limit point of an escaping sequence \( g_n \). Then there is a sequence of positive integers \( n_1, n_2, \ldots \) and two distinct points \( p \) and \( q \) in \( \mathbb{S}^2 \) such that \( g_{n_i}(w) \to p \) and \( g_{n_i}(z) \to q \) for every point \( z \) in \( \mathbb{S}^2 \) other than \( w \).
Clearly any group is a semigroup with equal backward and forward limit sets. In general the limit sets of a semigroup do not coincide, and we shall study how the two sets relate to each other and what they can tell us about the underlying semigroup.

For any set \( \mathcal{F} \subseteq \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3) \) we shall write \( \langle \mathcal{F} \rangle \) to denote the semigroup consisting of all finite compositions of elements that belong to \( \mathcal{F} \). We shall call \( \langle \mathcal{F} \rangle \) the \textit{semigroup generated by} \( \mathcal{F} \). If \( S = \langle \mathcal{F} \rangle \) for some finite collection \( \mathcal{F} \) of Möbius transformations, then we say that \( S \) is \textit{finitely-generated}. To be concise we denote the semigroup generated by elements \( f, g \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3) \) by \( \langle f, g \rangle \), rather than by \( \langle \{ f, g \} \rangle \).

It is often convenient to conjugate a semigroup by a Möbius transformation. One reason this is useful is because, as is well known, the group of Möbius transformations is transitive on distinct ordered triples. That is, for any two ordered lists of three distinct points in \( \mathbb{C} \), \( (p,q,r) \) and \( (p',q',r') \) say, there is a unique Möbius transformation that maps \( p, q \) and \( r \) to \( p', q' \) and \( r' \) respectively. If \( S \) is a semigroup then we can conjugate \( S \) by any \( f \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3) \) to give another semigroup

\[
T = fSf^{-1} = \{ fgf^{-1} \mid g \in S \}.
\]

It is clear that \( \Lambda^+(T) = f(\Lambda^+(S)) \) and \( \Lambda^-(T) = f(\Lambda^-(S)) \). Throughout this thesis whenever we say that a semigroup \( S \) is conjugate to a semigroup \( T \) we shall mean conjugate by an element in \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3) \). If \( S \) and \( T \) are semigroups and \( S \subseteq T \), then we shall describe \( S \) as a \textit{subsemigroup} of \( T \). Finally we observe that if \( S \) is a semigroup, then so is \( S^{-1} \).

In [15], Fried, Marotta and Stankewitz introduce semigroups of Möbius transformations and backward and forward limit sets. They go on to show that if the backward and forward limit sets of a semigroup are disjoint, then the semigroup can be regarded as an iterated function system on a certain metric space, which they construct. Recall that the limit set \( \Lambda(G) \) of a Kleinian group \( G \) is either a perfect set, or contains 0, 1 or 2 points. Moreover, a group \( G \) is said to be elementary if \( \Lambda(G) \) is not a perfect set, or equivalently, if there exists a point \( x \in \overline{\mathbb{B}^3} \) such that the \( G \)-orbit of \( x \) is finite. The following theorem, given in
Theorem 2.11] shows that just as for groups, semigroups of Möbius transformations come in varieties that can be regarded as elementary and nonelementary.

**Theorem 1.4.** Let $S$ be a semigroup. Then either $\Lambda^+(S)$ is a perfect set or $S$ is conjugate in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ to a semigroup $T$ of one of the following types.

(i) $|\Lambda^+(T)| = 0$ and $T$ is a semigroup of elliptic maps with a common fixed point,

(ii) $|\Lambda^+(T)| = 1$ and each $g \in T$ is of the form $g(z) = az + b$ with $a, b \in \mathbb{C}$ and $|a| \geq 1$, or

(iii) $|\Lambda^+(T)| = 2$ and each $g \in T$ is of the form $g(z) = az$ or $g(z) = a/z$ for some $a \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\}$.

**Definition** We say that a semigroup $S$ is elementary if there is a point $z \in \overline{\mathbb{B}^3}$ for which $S(z)$ is finite.

This definition is at odds with the definition used in [15], where a semigroup is described as elementary whenever $\Lambda^-(S)$ is finite. The definition used in [15] has two undesirable consequences. Firstly, it is possible for $S$ to be elementary and $S^{-1}$ not elementary; second, with this definition and when $S$ happens to be a group, it is possible for $S$ to be an elementary group but not an elementary semigroup. The former case happens if $S = \langle f, g \rangle$ where $f(z) = \frac{1}{3}z$ and $g(z) = \frac{1}{3}(z + 2)$. Then $\Lambda^+(S)$ is equal to the middle-thirds Cantor set and $\Lambda^-(S) = \{\infty\}$. The latter case, where $S$ an elementary group but $\Lambda^-(S)$ is not finite, happens if, for example, $S$ is the stabilizer in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ of some point $z \in \overline{\mathbb{C}}$. We shall call $\langle f, g \rangle$ the Cantor semigroup. The Cantor semigroup, which is given as an example in [15], is familiar and easy to analyse, and we shall use it again to illustrate new ideas.

The elementary semigroups are classified in the following theorem.

**Theorem 1.5.** Let $S$ be an elementary semigroup. Then either

(i) there is a point in $\mathbb{B}^3$ fixed by all elements of $S$; or

(ii) there is a point in $\overline{\mathbb{C}}$ fixed by all elements of $S$; or

(iii) there is a pair of points in $\overline{\mathbb{C}}$ fixed setwise by all elements of $S$.

**Proof.** Let $S$ be an elementary semigroup with finite orbit $X$. We can assume that $X$ is either contained in $\mathbb{B}^3$ or its ideal boundary. Any finite orbit is forward invariant, and so must be fixed setwise by each element in $S$. 


One possibility is that $|X| \geq 3$ and $X$ is contained in $S^2$. Since an element in $\text{Aut}(B^3)$ is uniquely determined by its action on three distinct points in $S^2$, $S$ itself must be finite, and in particular for any point $\zeta \in B^3$ its orbit $S(\zeta)$ is finite. In this case we write $K = S(\zeta)$. Another possibility is that $X \subseteq B^3$, in which case we set $K$ equal to $X$. In both these cases we have a finite set $K \subseteq B^3$ that is fixed setwise by each element in $S$. One possibility is that $K$ is a single point. Otherwise we can define $B$ to be the unique smallest closed hyperbolic ball containing $K$. We claim that $S$ fixes the (hyperbolic) centre of $B$. For any $g \in S$ we have $K \subseteq B \cap g(B)$. If $g$ does not fix $B$, then, by conjugating so that the origin $0$ is the midpoint of the line from the centre of $B$ to the centre of $g(B)$, it can be seen that $B \cap g(B)$ is contained in a hyperbolic ball of radius strictly less than the radius of $B$, contrary to our choice of $B$. It follows that no such $g$ exists, as claimed. Hence if either $X \subseteq B^3$, or both $|X| \geq 3$ and $X \subseteq \mathbb{C}$, then we must have case (i). It remains to consider the case where $|X| \leq 2$ and $X \subseteq \mathbb{C}$. We have already shown that each element of $S$ fixes $X$ setwise, hence we have case (ii) if $|X| = 1$ and case (iii) if $|X| = 2$.

The next observation follows immediately from the theorem.

**Corollary 1.6.** The semigroup $S$ is elementary if and only if $S^{-1}$ is elementary.

Below we give a finer classification of elementary semigroups, which follows easily from Theorems 1.4 and 1.5, and whose proof we omit.

**Proposition 1.7.** Any nontrivial elementary semigroup $S$ is of one of the following types:

(a) $\Lambda^+ = \Lambda^- = \emptyset$ and $S$ is a semigroup of hyperbolic rotations about a point in hyperbolic space.

(b) $\Lambda^+ = \Lambda^- = \{x\}$ and $S$ contains parabolic maps fixing $x$ and possibly elliptic maps fixing $x$. These are the only possible maps in $S$.

(c) $\Lambda^+ = \{\alpha\}$ and $\Lambda^- = \{\beta\}$ where $\alpha \neq \beta$. $S$ contains one or more loxodromic maps with attracting fixed point $\alpha$ and repelling fixed point $\beta$. There may also be elliptic maps that fix both points.

(d) $|\Lambda^+| = 1$ and $|\Lambda^-| > 2$. If $\Lambda^+ = \{\alpha\}$ then $S$ contains loxodromic maps with attracting fixed point $\alpha$ and possibly parabolic or elliptic maps fixing $\alpha$. The semigroup must contain at least two such loxodromic maps with different repelling fixed points.
(e) $|\Lambda^-| = 1$ and $|\Lambda^+| > 2$. Here the inverse semigroup $S^{-1}$ satisfies the preceding case.

(f) $|\Lambda^+| = |\Lambda^-| = 2$. In this case $\Lambda^+ = \Lambda^- = \{x, y\}$ and $S$ contains loxodromic maps and possibly elliptic maps fixing $\{x, y\}$ setwise. Both $x$ and $y$ must belong to both the set of attracting fixed points and the set of repelling fixed points of $S$.

(g) For some $z \in \overline{\mathbb{C}}$ each element in $S$ fixes $z$. Moreover $|\Lambda^+| > 2$ and $|\Lambda^-| > 2$.

In particular a semigroup that has at least one finite limit set is necessarily elementary. Case (g) represents the only elementary semigroups for which both limit sets are infinite. The distinction between elementary semigroups that have at least one finite limit set and those in case (g) is of significance. Accordingly we make the following definition.

**Definition** We say that an elementary semigroup $S$ is of **finite type** if at least one of $\Lambda^+(S)$ and $\Lambda^-(S)$ is a finite set. An elementary semigroup that is not of finite type is of **infinite type**.

In Chapter 3 we shall consider subsemigroups of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$, and there we give a specialised version of the above proposition, so that we can more precisely understand such semigroups. Notice that if one limit set contains exactly 0 or 2 points, then so does the other limit set. Cases (d) and (e) are the only classes of elementary semigroup for which exactly one of the limit sets is perfect. If both limit sets are singletons, then they may or may not be equal. Case (a), where both limit sets are empty, is exactly case (i) in Theorem 1.5. Cases (c) and (f) correspond to case (iii) in Theorem 1.5. All other cases (b), (d), (e), and (g) correspond to case (ii) in Theorem 1.5.

An example of case (e) is given by the Cantor semigroup, that is the semigroup $\langle f, g \rangle$ where $f(z) = \frac{1}{3}z$ and $g(z) = \frac{1}{3}(z + 2)$.

In the theory of Kleinian groups, the limit set $\Lambda(G)$ of a Kleinian group $G$ is the set of non-normality of $G$, that is, the complement of $\Lambda(G)$ is the largest open set upon which $G$ is a normal family. Similarly if $f$ is an analytic self-map of a Riemann surface, then the Julia set $J(f)$, defined to be the set of non-normality of the family $\{f^n \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$, is the smallest closed set that is fixed setwise by $f$. Moreover, when $G$ is a nonelementary Kleinian group, the repelling fixed points of $G$ are dense in $\Lambda(G)$, and, provided $f$ is not
a parabolic Möbius transformation, the repelling fixed points of \( \{ f^n \mid n \in \mathbb{N} \} \) are dense in \( J(f) \). For semigroups of Möbius transformations we have the following result.

**Theorem 1.8.** Suppose that \( S \) is a Möbius semigroup. Then:

(i) provided \( S \) contains loxodromic elements, the set of repelling fixed points of \( S \) is dense in \( \Lambda^- \);

(ii) the complement of \( \Lambda^- \) in \( S^2 \) is the largest open set upon which \( S \) is a normal family; and

(iii) if \( \Lambda^- \) contains at least three points then it is the smallest closed, backward invariant subset of the ideal boundary containing at least three points.

**Proof.** The first statement is given in [15, Theorem 2.4]. The second was essentially first proven in [1, Theorem 3.3], but also appears as [15, Theorem 2.6]. The final statement is [15, Remark 2.20]. The conclusion of statement (i) holds for all semigroups except those elementary semigroups that are not of case (b) in Proposition 1.7. □

By applying Theorem 1.8 to the nonelementary semigroup \( S^{-1} \), we observe that the attracting fixed points of \( S \) are dense in \( \Lambda^+ \). Moreover, \( \Lambda^+ \) is the smallest closed, forward invariant subset of \( S^2 \) containing at least three points. It follows that any forward invariant set containing at least three points is dense in \( \Lambda^+ \), so that in particular \( \Lambda_c^+ \) and \( \Lambda_h^+ \) are dense in \( \Lambda^+ \).

The concept of non-normality can be used to give a unified definition of the limit set \( \Lambda(G) \) of a Kleinian group \( G \) and the Julia \( J(f) \) set of an analytic function \( f \). The above theorem tells us that we can also define the backward limit set \( \Lambda^- \) of a Möbius semigroup using normality. There are, however, important differences between the behaviour of \( \Lambda^- \) and of \( \Lambda(G) \) and \( J(f) \). The set \( J(f) \) is fixed setwise by \( f \), and \( \Lambda(G) \) is fixed setwise by any element of \( G \). In contrast for a semigroup \( S \), in general neither limit set is fixed by all the elements in \( S \).

We finish this chapter with some remarks on the dynamics of semigroups of analytic functions under composition. The study of semigroups of rational functions was introduced
in 1995 by Hinkkanen and Martin [20]. They define the Julia set of a semigroup of rational functions acting on $\mathbb{C}$ to be the set of non-normality of the semigroup. In [20] the semigroup is taken to include at least one rational function that is not a Möbius transformation. The subject of semigroups of rational functions has since been further developed (see for example [19, 36, 39]). Semigroups of transcendental entire functions acting on $\mathbb{C}$ have also been studied; see, for example, [24].
CHAPTER 2

On Möbius semigroups

In this chapter we develop the theory of semigroups of Möbius transformations. In particular, we introduce the idea of a semidiscrete semigroup, which can be regarded as a generalisation of a discrete group. Some of our results on semidiscrete semigroups are analogues of known results on discrete groups, and it appears that the semidiscreteness property plays a role for semigroups somewhat similar to that of the discreteness property for groups.

1. The group and inverse free parts of a semigroup

The group part of a semigroup \( S \) is the set of elements in \( S \) whose inverses also lie in \( S \). Hence the group part of \( S \) is the largest subset of \( S \) that is also a group, and is equal to \( S \cap S^{-1} \). We call the complement of \( S \cap S^{-1} \) in \( S \) the inverse free part of \( S \), as it does not contain the identity. One possibility is that \( S \) itself is a group. In the other extreme, the group part of \( S \) might be empty, or equivalently \( I \not\in S \). This partition of a semigroup into its group part and inverse free part is particularly important because of the following lemma.

**Lemma 2.1.** Let \( S \) be a semigroup. If \( g, h \in S \), and one of them belongs to \( S \setminus S^{-1} \), then \( gh \in S \setminus S^{-1} \).

**Proof.** We prove the contrapositive assertion that if \( gh \in S \cap S^{-1} \) then \( g, h \in S \cap S^{-1} \). If \( gh \in S \cap S^{-1} \), then \( f = (gh)^{-1} \) is an element of \( S \). Therefore \( g^{-1} = hf \) and \( h^{-1} = fg \) both belong to \( S \), as required. \( \Box \)

It follows from Lemma 2.1 that the inverse free part of a semigroup is itself a semigroup. We define a word generated by a collection \( \mathcal{F} \) of Möbius transformations to be an expression of the form \( f_1 \ldots f_n \), where \( n \in \mathbb{N} \) and each \( f_i \) belongs to \( \mathcal{F} \). By regarding each
word as a composition of Möbius transformations, each word can be mapped to a Möbius transformation belonging to the semigroup $S$ generated by $\mathcal{F}$. This mapping is certainly surjective. We say $S$ is freely generated by $\mathcal{F}$ (or simply free) if the mapping is also injective.

**Lemma 2.2.** Suppose that $S$ is a semigroup generated by a set $\mathcal{F}$. If $S$ has a nonempty group part, then that group is generated by a subset of $\mathcal{F}$.

**Proof.** Let $\mathcal{G}$ denote the set of elements in $\mathcal{F}$ that belong to the group part of $S$. By Lemma 2.1, a word in the generators $\mathcal{F}$ represents an element of $S \cap S^{-1}$ if and only if all the letters in the word belong to $\mathcal{G}$. Therefore $S \cap S^{-1}$ is generated by $\mathcal{G}$. □

In particular, the group part of a finitely-generated semigroup $S$ is finitely-generated. In contrast, the inverse free part of $S$, that is, $S \setminus S^{-1}$, need not be finitely-generated, as the following example illustrates. Let $f$ and $g$ be two Möbius transformations that, as a group, generate a Schottky group. Consider the semigroup $S = \langle f, f^{-1}, g \rangle$. The set $S \setminus S^{-1}$ is exactly those Möbius transformations that arise from words generated by the set $\{f, f^{-1}, g\}$ that feature at least one occurrence of $g$. Since the group generated by $f$ and $g$ is freely generated, any finite set in $S \setminus S^{-1}$ cannot generate $gf^n$ for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$. This means that even though $S$ is finitely-generated, $S \setminus S^{-1}$ is not. In Section 2.4 of this chapter we shall consider how the limit sets of $S \setminus S^{-1}$ relate to the limit sets of $S$.

### 2. Semidiscrete semigroups

We now introduce an important property of semigroups.

**Definition** We say that a set $X$ of Möbius transformations is semidiscrete if the identity element $I$ is not an accumulation point of $X$ in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{H}^3)$.

As an example, consider the semigroup $S$ generated by $f(z) = 2z$ and $g(z) = \frac{1}{2}z + 1$. These are loxodromic Möbius transformations such that the attracting fixed point of $f$ equals the repelling fixed point of $g$, that is $\alpha_f = \beta_g$. This semigroup is not discrete because

$$g^n f^n(z) = z + 2 - \frac{1}{2^{n-1}} \to z + 2 \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty.$$
However, it is semidiscrete because each element of $S$ has the form $z \mapsto 2^n z + b$, where $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $b \in \mathbb{R}$, and it is easy to check that if $n = 0$ then $b > 1$.

In the theory of groups there are several properties that are equivalent to discreteness. Accordingly, we now consider properties of semigroups that are equivalent to being semidiscrete. The action of a semigroup $S$ on $\mathbb{B}^3$ is said to be properly discontinuous if for each point $\zeta$ in $\mathbb{B}^3$ there is a neighbourhood $U$ of $\zeta$ such that $g(U) \cap U \neq \emptyset$ for only finitely many elements $g$ of $S$. When $S$ is a group, it is discrete if and only if its action on $\mathbb{B}^3$ is properly discontinuous, and this is so precisely when the $S$-orbit of any point in $\mathbb{B}^3$ is locally finite. The next theorem is a comparable result for semigroups.

**Theorem 2.3.** Let $S$ be a semigroup. The following statements are equivalent:

(i) $S$ is semidiscrete;

(ii) the action of $S$ on $\mathbb{B}^3$ is properly discontinuous;

(iii) the $S$-orbit of any point $\zeta$ in $\mathbb{B}^3$ does not accumulate at $\zeta$.

We omit the elementary proof, which is similar to proofs of analogous theorems from the theory of Kleinian groups.

The action of a semigroup $S$ on $\mathbb{B}^3$ is said to be strongly discontinuous if for each point $\zeta$ in $\mathbb{B}^3$ there is a neighbourhood $U$ of $\zeta$ such that $g(U) \cap U = \emptyset$ for every element $g$ of $S$. This definition is close to the definition of a discontinuous action in the theory of Fuchsian groups, but there the intersection $g(U) \cap U$ is only required to be empty for elements of the group other than the identity.

**Theorem 2.4.** Let $S$ be a semigroup. The following statements are equivalent:

(i) $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free;

(ii) the action of $S$ on $\mathbb{B}^3$ is strongly discontinuous;

(iii) the $S$-orbit of any point $\zeta$ in $\mathbb{B}^3$ stays a positive distance away from $\zeta$.

Again, the proof is straightforward, and omitted.

### 3. Schottky semigroups

Here we introduce a large class of finitely-generated, inverse free semidiscrete semigroups. We first give a condition which ensures that a semigroup is inverse free and semidiscrete.
Theorem 2.5. Let $K$ be a closed subset of $\mathbb{S}^2$ and let $\mathcal{F}$ be a finite subset of Aut($\mathbb{B}^3$) comprised of transformations that map $K$ within itself. Further suppose that the elements of $\mathcal{F}$ that fix $K$ setwise generate a finite group. Then the semigroup $S$ generated by $\mathcal{F}$ is semidiscrete. If no element in $\mathcal{F}$ fixes $K$ setwise, then $S$ is also inverse free.

Proof. First we prove that the semigroup $S$ generated by $\mathcal{F}$ is semidiscrete. Suppose, on the contrary, that $S$ is not semidiscrete; then there is a sequence of distinct elements $g_n$ of $S$ that converges to the identity map $I$. Let $\mathcal{F}_0$ denote those elements in $\mathcal{F}$ that fix $K$ setwise, and let $\mathcal{F}_1$ denote those elements in $\mathcal{F}$ that map $K$ strictly within itself. Let $G$ be the group generated by $\mathcal{F}_0$. Each map $g_n$ can be written as a composition of elements of $\mathcal{F}$. One possibility is that infinitely many $g_n$ lie in $G$. Then since $G$ is finite we have $g_n = I$ for infinitely many $n$, contrary to our assumption that the elements in the sequence $g_n$ are distinct. Otherwise we may pass to a subsequence such that we can write $g_n = pfq_n$, for $n = 1, 2, \ldots$, where $f \in \mathcal{F}_1$, $q_n \in S$ and $p \in G \cup \{I\}$. Then $g_n(K) = p(f(q_n(K))) \subseteq p(f(K))$. Since $f(K)$ is a proper subset of $K$, so is $pf(K)$. It follows that $g_n$ cannot accumulate at the identity. Hence $S$ is semidiscrete.

To show the contrapositive of the final statement, suppose that $S$ contains the identity. Then $I = f_1 \cdots f_m$ for some $f_1, \ldots, f_m \in \mathcal{F}$ and positive integer $m$. Suppose towards contradiction that some $f_i$ lies in $\mathcal{F}_1$. Then $f_1 \cdots f_m(K) \subseteq f_1 \cdots f_i(K) \subseteq f_1 \cdots f_{i-1}(K)$, so that $f_1 \cdots f_m$ cannot be the identity map. Hence each $f_i$ lies in $\mathcal{F}_0$, and in particular $\mathcal{F}_0$ is nonempty. \qed

Suppose now that $K$ is the union of a finite collection of disjoint, closed discs in $\mathbb{S}^2$, and let $\mathcal{F}$ be a finite subset of Aut($\mathbb{B}^3$) made up of transformations that map $K$ strictly within itself. A Schottky semigroup is a semigroup generated by such a set $\mathcal{F}$. We use this terminology because Schottky groups contain many Schottky semigroups; for example, if $f$ and $g$ generate as a group a Schottky group, then $f$ and $g$ generate as a semigroup a Schottky semigroup.

We now give an example of a finitely-generated inverse free semidiscrete semigroup that is not a Schottky semigroup. In this example, as usual, we denote the attracting and
repelling fixed points of a loxodromic element $g$ of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ by $\alpha_g$ and $\beta_g$, respectively. Let $f$, $g$ and $h$ be loxodromic maps in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ that generate as a group a Schottky group (not a Schottky semigroup). Choose these maps in such a way that $\alpha_f$ and $\alpha_h$ lie in different components of $S^1 \setminus \{\alpha_g, \beta_g\}$. Let $q = fg^{-1}f^{-1}$, and define $S = \langle f, g, h, q \rangle$ (see Figure 2.1). This semigroup lies in a discrete group, so it is semidiscrete. To see that $S$ is inverse free, suppose, in order to reach a contradiction, that $w_1 \cdots w_n = I$, where $w_i$ is a positive power of either $f$, $g$, $h$ or $q$ for $i = 1, \ldots, n$. By thinking of $w_1 \cdots w_n$ as a word in $f$, $g$ and $h$, we see that $w_i$ cannot equal $f$ or $h$ (because the sum of the powers of each of $f$, $g$ and $h$ in this word must be 0, as those three maps generate a free group). Therefore each map $w_i$ is equal to either $g^m$ or $fg^{-m}f^{-1}$, for some positive integer $m$, so clearly it is not possible for $w_1 \cdots w_n$ to equal the identity after all.

It remains to prove that there is not a finite collection of disjoint, closed intervals in $S^1$ whose union $K$ is mapped strictly within itself by each element of $S$. Suppose there is such a set $K$. Then it must contain $\Lambda^+(S)$, so, in particular, it contains $\alpha_g$. Furthermore, it contains $g^n(\alpha_f)$ and $g^n(\alpha_h)$ for each positive integer $n$. These points accumulate on either side of $\alpha_g$ (our initial choice of $f$, $g$ and $h$ ensures that this is so). It follows that $\alpha_g$ is an interior point of $K$. Now, $q = fg^{-1}f^{-1}$, so $\beta_q = f(\alpha_g)$, which implies that $\beta_q$ is also an interior point of $K$. However, this is impossible because $q(K) \subseteq K$. Therefore $S$ is not a Schottky semigroup.

An important feature of this example is that the generating set is not unique, because $S = \langle fg, g, h, q \rangle$, as one can easily verify. Although $S$ is contained in a Schottky group,
this property is not mandatory for a finitely-generated, semidiscrete and inverse free semi-
group whose generating set is not unique. Indeed, by appending an appropriate Möbius
transformation onto $S$, we can generate a larger semigroup with these same properties that
is not contained in a Schottky group. More specifically, we can use the construction out-
lined in Chapter 2, Section 6 to choose an element $t \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ such that $T = \langle f, g, h, q, t \rangle$
is also semidiscrete, inverse free and finitely-generated, but not uniquely generated by
$\{f, g, h, q, t\}$, nor contained within a discrete group. The problem of determining whether
or not a particular generating set for a semigroup is unique will be dealt with in Theo-
rem 4.25 and the surrounding discussion.

4. Composition sequences

Recall that a sequence $G_n$ of Möbius transformations is an escaping sequence if, for some
point $\zeta$ in $\mathbb{B}^3$, the orbit $G_n(\zeta)$ does not accumulate at any point in $\mathbb{B}^3$. There are various
equivalent ways of describing escaping sequences, one of which is captured in the following
standard lemma (we omit the elementary proof).

**Lemma 2.6.** A sequence of Möbius transformations is an escaping sequence if and only if
it does not contain a subsequence that converges to a Möbius transformation.

The statement that a sequence $G_n$ of Möbius transformations converges uniformly to
another Möbius transformation $G$ is equivalent to $\sigma(G_n, G) \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$, where $\sigma$
is the metric of uniform convergence introduced in Chapter 1. The relationship between
composition sequences and semigroups is a central theme of this thesis. The key to this
relationship is the following simple theorem, which characterises when every composition
sequence generated by $S$ converges.

**Theorem 2.7.** Let $S = \langle F \rangle$ be a semigroup. The following are equivalent:

(i) $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free.

(ii) Every composition sequence generated by $F$ is an escaping sequence.

(iii) Every composition sequence generated by $S$ is an escaping sequence.

**Proof.** We first show that (iii) implies (i). Suppose that $S$ is not both semidiscrete
and inverse free. Then either the identity transformation $I$ is an accumulation point of
4. COMPOSITION SEQUENCES

S in Aut(B³), or else it belongs to S. In other words, I ∈ S. Hence there is a sequence gₙ in S that converges to I. By restricting to a subsequence of gₙ, we can assume that \( \sum \sigma(gₙ, I) < +\infty \). Now define \( Gₙ = g₁ \cdots gₙ \) for \( n \in \mathbb{N} \). Using the right-invariance of \( \sigma \) we see that

\[
\sigma(G⁻¹ₙ, G⁻¹ₙ₋₁) = \sigma(G⁻¹ₙGₙ, G⁻¹ₙ₋₁Gₙ) = \sigma(I, gₙ).
\]

Therefore \( \sum \sigma(G⁻¹ₙ, G⁻¹ₙ₋₁) < +\infty \), which implies that \( G⁻¹ₙ \) is a Cauchy sequence. Hence \( Gₙ \) is a Cauchy sequence too. As \( \sigma \) is a complete metric on Aut(B³), the sequence \( Gₙ \) converges. Hence by Lemma 2.6, \( Gₙ \) is not an escaping sequence, and so we have found a composition sequence generated by \( S \) that is not an escaping sequence.

To see (i) implies (iii), suppose that there are maps \( gₙ \) in \( S \) such that the composition sequence \( Gₙ = g₁ \cdots gₙ \) generated by \( S \) is not an escaping sequence. Then, by Lemma 2.6 there is a subsequence \( G_{nₖ} \) that converges to a Möbius transformation \( G \). It follows that \( G_{nₖ₋₁}⁻¹G_{nₖ} \to I \) as \( k \to \infty \). But

\[
G_{nₖ₋₁}⁻¹G_{nₖ} = (g₁ \cdots g_{nₖ₋₁})⁻¹(g₁ \cdots g_{nₖ}) = g_{nₖ₋₁+1} \cdots g_{nₖ},
\]

so this sequence lies in \( S \). It follows that \( I \in \mathfrak{S} \), so \( S \) is not both semidiscrete and inverse free.

Since each composition sequence generated by \( S \) is a subsequence of some composition sequence generated by \( \mathcal{F} \), we see that (ii) implies (iii). On the other hand \( \mathcal{F} \subseteq S \), and so (iii) implies (ii).

We say that a sequence of Möbius transformations is discrete if the set of transformations that make up the sequence is a discrete subset of Aut(B³). Although escaping sequences are all discrete, by definition, the converse does not hold; for example, the trivial sequence \( I, I, I, \ldots \) is discrete, but it is not an escaping sequence.

The preceding theorem gives a condition in terms of composition sequences for a semigroup to be both semidiscrete and inverse free. The next, similar theorem gives a condition in terms of composition sequences for a semigroup to be semidiscrete. The proof is similar, so we only sketch the details.

**Theorem 2.8.** Let \( S = \langle \mathcal{F} \rangle \) be a semigroup. The following are equivalent:

(i) \( S \) is semidiscrete.
(ii) Every composition sequence generated by $F$ is discrete.
(iii) Every composition sequence generated by $S$ is discrete.

Proof. We first show that (iii) implies (i). Suppose that $S$ is not semidiscrete. Then there is a sequence of distinct transformations $g_n$ from $S$ that converges to $I$. As before, we can define a composition sequence $G_n = g_1 \cdots g_n$ for $n = 1, 2, \ldots$, and, providing that $g_n$ converges to $I$ sufficiently quickly, we see that $G_n$ converges to some Möbius transformation $G$. Because the maps $g_n$ are distinct, it follows that $G_n \neq G$ for infinitely many $n$. Hence $G_n$ is not discrete.

To see that (i) implies (iii), suppose that there are maps $g_n$ in $S$ such that the composition sequence $G_n = g_1 \cdots g_n$ generated by $S$ is not discrete. Then we can choose a subsequence $G_{n_k}$ consisting of distinct maps that converges to a Möbius transformation $G$. Therefore $G_{n_k}^{-1}G_{n_k} \to I$ as $k \to \infty$, where $G_{n_k}^{-1}G_{n_k} \in S \setminus \{I\}$. This implies that $S$ is not semidiscrete.

Since each composition sequence generated by $S$ is a subsequence of some composition sequence generated by $F$, we see that (ii) implies (iii). Conversely since $F \subseteq S$ it follows that (iii) implies (ii).

5. Covering regions

In this section we introduce the concept of a covering region for a semigroup. These appear to play a role for semidiscrete semigroups somewhat similar to the role played by fundamental regions for discrete groups. A covering region for a semigroup $S$ is a closed subset $D$ of $\mathbb{B}^3$ with nonempty interior such that

$$\bigcup_{g \in S \cup \{I\}} g(D) = \mathbb{B}^3.$$

Trivially, $\mathbb{B}^3$ itself is a covering region for $S$. Let us denote the interior of a set $X$ by $\text{int}(X)$. We say that a covering region $D$ is a fundamental region for $S$ if it satisfies the additional property $\text{int}(D) \cap \text{int}(g(D)) = \emptyset$ whenever $g$ is a nonidentity element of $S$. This definition coincides with the usual definition of a fundamental region when $S$ is a Kleinian group.
The next theorem due to Bell [10, Theorem 3] says that if a semigroup has a fundamental region, then it is in fact a Kleinian group. Although we do not use the next theorem again, we include it because [10] is difficult to obtain, and the proof presented there is excessively complicated.

**Theorem 2.9.** Suppose that $D$ is a fundamental region for a semigroup $S$ such that $\text{int}(D) = D$. Then $S$ is a Kleinian group with fundamental region $D$.

**Proof.** Let $p \in \text{int}(D)$ and choose any element $g$ of $S$. As $D$ is a fundamental region, there is another element $h$ of $S \cup \{I\}$ such that $g^{-1}(p) \in h(D)$. Hence $p \in gh(D)$, and since $p \in \text{int}(D)$ and there are points in $gh(\text{int}(D))$ that accumulate at $p$ (using that $\text{int}(D) = D$) we see that $\text{int}(D) \cap gh(\text{int}(D)) \neq \emptyset$. Therefore $gh = I$, and so $h = g^{-1}$. Since $g$ was arbitrarily chosen, $S$ is a group with fundamental region $D$. Hence it must be a Kleinian group because it has a fundamental region. \[\Box\]

We remark that in the theorem above, instead of assuming that $\text{int}(D) = D$, we can suppose that $S$ is countable. To see this we argue as follows: First note that $D$ must have non-empty interior, for otherwise $D$ is nowhere dense (as $D$ is closed), in which case $S(D)$ cannot cover $\mathbb{B}^3$ by the Baire category theorem. If $g$ is an element of $S$ then $g^{-1}(\text{int}(D))$ meets $S(D) = S(\partial D) \cup S(\text{int}(D))$. Note that $\partial D$ is nowhere dense since $D$ is closed. Since $S$ is countable the Baire category theorem tells us that $S(\partial D)$ has empty interior. Hence $S(\partial D)$ does not cover $g^{-1}(\text{int}(D))$, and so $g^{-1}(\text{int}(D)) \cap h(\text{int}(D)) \neq \emptyset$ for some $h \in S$. Hence $\text{int}(D) \cap gh(\text{int}(D)) \neq \emptyset$ and it follows that $gh = I$, that is $h = g^{-1}$.

We now consider covering regions that are not necessarily fundamental regions. In the following lemma we refer to the inverse free part of a semigroup $S$, which is the set $S \setminus S^{-1}$.

**Lemma 2.10.** If $D$ is a covering region for a semigroup $S$ that is not a group, then $D$ is also a covering region for the inverse free part of $S$.

**Proof.** Choose any point $p \in \mathbb{B}^3$ and let $f \in S \setminus S^{-1}$. Then there is an element $g$ of $S \cup \{I\}$ such that $f^{-1}(p) \in g(D)$. Hence $p \in fg(D)$. By Lemma 2.1, $fg \in S \setminus S^{-1}$. As $p$ was chosen arbitrarily it follows that $D$ is a covering region for $S \setminus S^{-1}$. \[\Box\]
We now give the main result of this section, which says that any semidiscrete semigroup with a bounded covering region is in fact a group. The proof of this theorem is a good example of how composition sequences themselves can be used as a tool for studying semigroups.

**Theorem 2.11.** Any semidiscrete semigroup that has a bounded covering region is a Kleinian group.

**Proof.** Let $S$ be a semidiscrete semigroup and choose any point $\zeta$ in $\mathbb{B}^3$. As $S$ has a bounded covering region, we can choose a suitably large open hyperbolic ball $D$, with (hyperbolic) radius $r$ and centre $\zeta$, such that

$$\bigcup_{g \in S \cup \{I\}} g(D) = \mathbb{B}^3.$$ 

As $\partial D$ is compact, there is a finite subset $T$ of $S$ such that $\partial D \subseteq \bigcup_{g \in T} g(D)$.

We suppose $T$ has been chosen with no redundancy, so that $\rho(g(\zeta), \zeta) \leq 2r$ for each $g \in T$. We construct a composition sequence $G_n = g_1 \cdots g_n$ generated by $T$ as follows.

(i) If $n > 1$ and $\zeta \in G_{n-1}(\overline{D})$, then choose $g_n$ arbitrarily from $T$.

(ii) Otherwise, choose $g_n$ from $T$ such that $\rho(g_n(D), \zeta)$ is minimised.

Let $\rho_n = \rho(G_n(\overline{D}), \zeta)$ and suppose $n \geq 2$. If $g_n$ is chosen according to (i), then $\rho(G_{n-1}(\zeta), \zeta) \leq r$, so

$$\rho(G_n(\zeta), \zeta) \leq \rho(G_n(\zeta), G_{n-1}(\zeta)) + \rho(G_{n-1}(\zeta), \zeta) = \rho(g_n(\zeta), \zeta) + \rho(G_{n-1}(\zeta), \zeta) \leq 3r.$$

Hence $\rho_n \leq 3r$. Suppose now that $g_n$ is chosen according to (ii). Note that the collection $\{G_{n-1}g(D) \mid g \in T\}$ covers $G_{n-1}(\partial D)$. Therefore

$$\rho(G_{n-1}(\overline{D}), \zeta) = \rho(G_{n-1}(\partial D), \zeta) \geq \rho(G_n(\overline{D}), \zeta);$$

that is, $\rho_{n-1} \geq \rho_n$.

It follows that the sequence $\rho_n$ is bounded, and so $G_n$ is not an escaping sequence. Theorem 2.7 now tells us that $S$ is not inverse free. We know from Lemma 2.10 that the inverse free part of $S$, if nonempty, also has $D$ as a covering region. But applying the
above argument with $S \setminus S^{-1}$ replacing $S$ gives a contradiction, because $S \setminus S^{-1}$ is inverse free. Therefore $S \setminus S^{-1}$ is empty, and so $S$ is a semidiscrete group, that is, a Kleinian group. □

The converse is false: if $S$ is a Kleinian group it may have no bounded covering region, regardless of whether or not its limit set is the full ideal boundary.

Given a semidiscrete semigroup $S$ and a point $w$ in $\mathbb{B}^3$ that is not fixed by any element of $S \setminus \{I\}$, we define the Dirichlet region for $S$ centred at $w$ to be the set

$$D_w(S) = \{ z \in \mathbb{B}^3 \mid \rho(z, w) \leq \rho(z, g(w)) \text{ for all } g \in S \setminus \{I\} \}.$$

This is the same definition of a Dirichlet region used in the theory of Kleinian groups. Because the points $S(w)$ do not accumulate at $w$ or contain $w$, the Dirichlet region centred at $w$ always contains some open neighbourhood of $w$. We next verify that Dirichlet regions of semidiscrete semigroups are indeed covering regions.

**Theorem 2.12.** Let $S$ be a semidiscrete semigroup and let $w$ be a point in $\mathbb{B}^3$ that is not fixed by any element of $S \setminus \{I\}$. Then $D_w(S)$ is a covering region for $S$.

**Proof.** The set $D_w(S)$ is closed because it is an intersection of closed sets (similarly it is also convex, although we do not use this fact). It has nonempty interior because, by Theorem 2.3, the orbit of $w$ under $S$ does not accumulate at $w$. To verify the covering property, suppose towards contradiction that there is a point $z$ in $\mathbb{B}^3$ that does not lie in $h(D_w(S))$ for any element $h$ of $S \cup \{I\}$. Then $h^{-1}(z) \notin D_w(S)$, which implies that there is a map $g$ in $S \cup \{I\}$ that satisfies $\rho(h^{-1}(z), w) > \rho(h^{-1}(z), g(w))$. In other words,

$$\text{(3) for all } h \in S \cup \{I\} \text{ there exists } g \in S \cup \{I\} \text{ such that } \rho(z, h(w)) > \rho(z, hg(w)).$$

We use (3) to recursively define a composition sequence $F_n = f_1 \cdots f_n$, where $f_i \in S \cup \{I\}$. Let $f_1 = I$. If $f_1, \ldots, f_{n-1}$ have been defined, then, using (3), we let $f_n$ be an element of $S \cup \{I\}$ that satisfies $\rho(z, F_{n-1}(w)) > \rho(z, F_{n-1}f_n(w))$. The resulting composition sequence $F_n$ satisfies

$$\rho(z, w) > \rho(z, F_1(w)) > \rho(z, F_2(w)) > \cdots.$$
As $S$ is semidiscrete, Theorem 2.8 tells us that the composition sequence $F_n$ is discrete. But the sequence $F_n(w)$ is bounded, so it must have a constant subsequence. This contradicts the sequence of strict inequalities above. Hence, contrary to our earlier assumption,

$$z \in \bigcup_{h \in S \cup \{I\}} h(D_w(S)),$$

and so $D_w(S)$ is a covering region for $S$. □

We remark that for a semidiscrete semigroup it is always possible to choose a point $w \in \mathbb{B}^3$ that is not fixed by any element of $S \setminus \{I\}$. The set of points in $\mathbb{B}^3$ that are fixed by some element of $S \setminus \{I\}$ are necessarily fixed points of elliptic transformations that lie in $S$. Since $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free the elliptic transformations in $S$ form a discrete group, and in particular there are countably many of them. Hence the set of $w \in \mathbb{B}^3$ fixed by an element of $S \setminus \{I\}$ is contained in a countable union of geodesics of $\mathbb{B}^3$. It follows that one can always define a Dirichlet region for semidiscrete semigroups.

Recall from Chapter 1 that the forward horospherical limit set of $S$, $\Lambda^+_h(S)$, is the set of points $x$ in $\Lambda^+(S)$ such that, for any point $\zeta$ in $\mathbb{B}^3$, the orbit $S(\zeta)$ meets every horoball based at $x$. The remainder of this section is concerned with proving that if the forward horospherical limit set of a semidiscrete semigroup is the entire ideal boundary, then every Dirichlet region of $S$ is bounded. As we do this, it is convenient to work with the upper half-space model of hyperbolic space, chiefly because in this model, a horoball based at $\infty$ takes a convenient form. Recall that a point $z \in \mathbb{H}^3$ can be written in the form $z = x + tj$ where $x \in \mathbb{C}$ and $t > 0$. We define the height of $z$ to be $ht[z] = t$. Given $x$ in $\mathbb{C}$ and $w$ in $\mathbb{H}^3$, let $H_x(w)$ denote the open horoball that is based at $x$ and tangent to $w$. So, working in the upper half-space model, $H_\infty(w) = \{z \in \mathbb{H}^3 \mid ht[z] > ht[w]\}$. Let $\gamma_z = \{z + tJ \mid t \geq 0\}$ denote the vertical geodesic from $z$ to $\infty$. Then $\overline{\gamma_z} = \gamma_z \cup \{\infty\}$. Given distinct points $u$ and $v$ in $\mathbb{H}^3$, we define

$$K(u, v) = \{z \in \mathbb{H}^3 \mid \rho(z, u) \leq \rho(z, v)\}.$$

Note that $\overline{K(u, v)}$ is the closure of $K(u, v)$ in $\mathbb{H}^3$ (it is not the same as $K(u, v)$).

The next lemma is an elementary exercise in hyperbolic geometry.
Lemma 2.13. Suppose that $u$ and $v$ are distinct points in $\mathbb{H}^3$ and $\text{ht}[u] < \text{ht}[v]$. Then 
\[
K(u, v) \cap \gamma_v = \emptyset.
\]

We use the lemma to prove the following theorem, which we shall need in Chapter 3, and helps us relate Dirichlet regions to horospherical limit sets.

Theorem 2.14. Let $S$ be a semidiscrete semigroup, $x \in \overline{C}$ and $w \in \mathbb{H}^3$. Then $x \in \overline{D_w(S)}$ if and only if the $S$-orbit of $w$ does not meet $H_x(w)$.

Proof. By conjugating, we can assume that $x = \infty$ and $w = j$. First suppose that the $S$-orbit of $j$ meets $H_\infty(j)$. Then there is an element $g$ of $S$ such that $g(j) \in H_\infty(j)$, and so $\text{ht}[g(j)] > 1$. By Lemma 2.13, $\infty \notin K(j, g(j))$. Since $D_j(S)$ is contained in $K(j, g(j))$, we see that $\infty \notin \overline{D_j(S)}$.

Conversely, suppose that $g(j) \notin H_\infty(j)$ for every element $g$ of $S$. Then for each map $g$, we have $\gamma_j \subseteq K(j, g(j))$. Therefore $\gamma_j \subseteq D_j(S)$, so $\infty \in \overline{D_j(S)}$. \hfill \Box

An immediate consequence of the theorem is the following important corollary.

Corollary 2.15. Let $S$ be a semidiscrete semigroup. If $\Lambda^+_{h^+}(S) = \overline{C}$, then $S$ is a Kleinian group and every Dirichlet region of $S$ is bounded in $\mathbb{H}^3$.

Proof. Let $D_w(S)$ be a Dirichlet region for $S$. We are given that $\Lambda^+_{h^+}(S) = \overline{C}$, so the orbit $S(w)$ meets every horoball in $\mathbb{H}^3$. Theorem 2.14 now tells us that $\overline{D_w(S)} \cap \overline{C} = \emptyset$. Therefore $D_w(S)$ is bounded in $\mathbb{H}^3$, and we infer from Theorem 2.11 that $S$ is a Kleinian group. \hfill \Box

In the theory of Kleinian groups there are various theorems that relate the group to the geometry of its Dirichlet region. For example, any Dirichlet region of a Fuchsian group has finitely many sides (that is, maximal subsets of the region’s boundary that are contained within geodesic segments) precisely when the group is finitely-generated. It is natural to ask whether results of this type exist for semidiscrete semigroups. Corollary 2.15 is one such result and in Theorem 2.17 we use the Dirichlet region to characterise exactly when the forward limit set is equal to the full ideal boundary, at least for countable, semidiscrete and inverse free semigroups.
For the rest of this chapter it is convenient to work in the ball model. For a semidiscrete semigroup \( S \), and any \( w \in \mathbb{B}^3 \) that is not fixed by any element of \( S \), we define the ideal boundary of \( D_w(S) \), which we denote by \( e_w(S) \), to be \( \overline{D_w(S)} \cap S^2 \), where the closure is taken with respect to the Euclidean metric. As usual we abbreviate \( e_w(S) \) to \( e_w \) whenever the semigroup is unambiguous. We note that \( e_w \) is a closed subset of \( S^2 \). We shall show that, under certain assumptions, \( e_w \) has a non-empty interior precisely when the forward limit set is not the full ideal boundary. Towards this, we need an initial lemma, the proof of which makes use of composition sequences in an essential way. We shall need to consider the set of points in \( \Lambda^+ \) that are the limit points of some composition sequence generated by \( S \). We denote the set of such points by \( \Lambda^+_q \), and note that \( \Lambda^+_q \) is forward invariant, and so by Theorem 1.8 \( \Lambda^+_q \) is a dense subset of \( \Lambda^+ \) whenever \( S \) is nonelementary.

**Lemma 2.16.** Suppose that \( S \) is a countable, semidiscrete and inverse free semigroup. Then for all \( w \in \mathbb{B}^3 \) we have

\[
S^2 \setminus \Lambda^+_q \subseteq S(w).
\]

**Proof.** First note that since \( S \) is semidiscrete and inverse free, no point in \( \mathbb{B}^3 \) is fixed by any element of \( S \), and so \( e_w \), the ideal boundary of \( D_w(S) \), is defined. For a point \( x \in S^2 \) recall that \( H_x(w) \) is the horoball based at \( x \) such that \( w \in \mathbb{B}^3 \) lies on its boundary. It suffices to show that for all \( x \in S^2 \setminus \Lambda^+_q \) and all \( w \in \mathbb{B}^3 \), there exists \( g \in S \) such that \( g^{-1}(x) \in e_w \). Suppose towards contradiction that this is false, that is, there exists some \( w \in \mathbb{B}^3 \) and \( x \in S^2 \setminus \Lambda^+_q \) such that \( g^{-1}(x) \notin e_w \) for all \( g \in S \). Theorem 2.14 tells us that \( x \in e_w \) if and only if \( S(w) \cap H_x(w) = \emptyset \). Hence

\[
S(w) \cap H^{-1}(x)(w) \neq \emptyset,
\]

or equivalently

\[
gS(w) \cap H_x(g(w)) \neq \emptyset,
\]

for all \( g \in S \). Now choose any \( f_1 \in S \). Using (4) and setting \( g = f_1 \), there exists \( f_2 \in S \) such that

\[
f_1f_2(w) \in H_x(f_1(w)).
\]
Again appealing to (4) with \( g = f_1 f_2 \), there exists \( f_3 \in S \) such that
\[
f_1 f_2 f_3(w) \in H_x(f_1 f_2(w)).
\]

Figure 2.2. The sequence \( F_n(w) \)

Continuing in this way (see Figure 2.2) we obtain a sequence \( f_\infty \) in \( S \) such that
\[
F_{n+1}(w) \in H_x(F_n(w)),
\]
for each \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), where \( F_n = f_1 \cdots f_n \).

Since \( S \) is semidiscrete and inverse free, Theorem 2.7 tells us that the sequence \( F_n(w) \) accumulates only on the ideal boundary. Since each point in \( F_n(w) \) belongs to the horoball \( H_x(f_1(w)) \), the sequence of points \( F_n(w) \) converges to \( x \). But this contradicts the assumption that \( x \notin \Lambda_q^+ \); hence, for any \( w \in \mathbb{B}^3 \), we have \( x \in g(e_w) \) for some \( g \in S \). Since \( x \) was chosen arbitrarily in the complement of \( \Lambda_q^+ \) we have shown
\[
\mathbb{S}^2 \setminus \Lambda_q^+ \subseteq S(e_w),
\]
as required.

Theorem 2.11 says that if a semidiscrete semigroup has a bounded covering domain, then it is a group. The next theorem is of a similar flavour.

**Theorem 2.17.** Suppose \( S \) is a countable, semidiscrete and inverse free semigroup. Then for any \( w \in \mathbb{B}^3 \) the set \( e_w \) has empty interior as a subspace of \( \mathbb{S}^2 \) if and only if \( \Lambda_q^+ = \mathbb{S}^2 \).
Proof. Suppose \( e_w \) contains an open set, \( U \) say. Since \( \Lambda^+_h \) is both dense in \( \Lambda^+ \) and disjoint from \( e_w \) it follows that \( \Lambda^+ \) does not meet \( U \), and so \( \Lambda^+ \neq S^2 \).

For the converse, suppose that \( \Lambda^+ \neq S^2 \). Note that a closed set is nowhere dense if and only if it does not contain an open set. Towards contradiction suppose that \( e_w \) is nowhere dense. Since \( S \) is countable \( S(e_w) \) is a meagre set, that is, a countable union of nowhere dense sets. It follows from the Baire category theorem that \( S(e_w) \) has empty interior. Now by Lemma 2.16 we have

\[
\text{int}(S^2 \setminus \Lambda^+_q) \subseteq \text{int}(S(e_w)) = \emptyset,
\]

and so

\[
S^2 \setminus \overline{\Lambda^+_q} = \emptyset,
\]

where the interiors and closures are taken with respect to the Euclidean topology on \( S^2 \). But since \( \Lambda^+_q \) is dense in \( \Lambda^+ \) it follows that \( \Lambda^+ = S^2 \), contrary to our assumption. Hence \( e_w \) cannot be nowhere dense after all. \( \square \)

It follows that for any countable, semidiscrete and inverse free semigroup \( S \), if \( w \) and \( w' \) are points in \( B^3 \) that are not fixed by any element of \( S \), then \( e_w \) has empty interior if and only if \( e_{w'} \) also has empty interior. In fact we have the following theorem, due to Edward Crane.

**Theorem 2.18.** Suppose \( S \) is a countable, semidiscrete and inverse free semigroup, and \( w \) and \( w' \) are points in \( B^3 \). Then \( e_w \) is empty if and only if \( e_{w'} \) is also empty.

Proof. First suppose that \( e_w \) is empty, and so \( D_w \) is a bounded covering region of \( S \). Since \( D_w \) is a compact fundamental region, it follows from Theorem 2.11 that \( S \) is a Kleinian group. Let \( r \) be the diameter of the quotient orbifold \( M = B^3 / S \), which is finite because \( D_w \) is compact. Let \( \pi : B^3 \to M \) be the quotient map. Then for any point \( w' \in B^3 \) and any \( x \in B^3 \) such that \( \rho(x, w') > r \), we can lift a shortest path in \( M \) from \( \pi(x) \) to \( \pi(w') \) to a path in \( B^3 \) of the same length (at most \( r \)), starting at \( x \). The lifted path finishes at some \( g(w') \) for \( g \in S \setminus \{I\} \), and \( \rho(x, w') > r \geq \rho(x, g(w')) \), so \( x \notin D_{w'}(S) \). Hence \( D_{w'}(S) \) is bounded, and \( e_{w'} = \emptyset \) as required. \( \square \)
6. Constructing new semidiscrete semigroups from old

We now describe a technique based on one of the well known combination theorems of Klein, given in the introduction of [30] and which we now state.

**Theorem 2.19.** Suppose $G_1$ and $G_2$ are two finitely-generated Kleinian groups with fundamental regions $D_1$ and $D_2$ respectively. Further suppose that the interior of $D_1$ contains the boundary and exterior of $D_2$, and the interior of $D_2$ contains the boundary and exterior of $D_1$. Then the group $G$ generated by $G_1 \cup G_2$ is discrete and $D_1 \cap D_2$ is a fundamental region for $G$.

Given distinct points $u$ and $v$ in $\mathbb{B}^3$, recall that $K(u,v) = \{ z \in \mathbb{B}^3 : \rho(z,u) \leq \rho(z,v) \}$. Notice that $g(K(u,v)) = K(g(u),g(v))$ for any Möbius transformation $g$. If $S$ is a semidiscrete semigroup, and $w$ is a point of $\mathbb{B}^3$ that is not fixed by any element of $S$, then we can express the Dirichlet region for $S$ centred at $w$ as

$$D_w(S) = \bigcap_{g \in S \setminus \{I\}} K(w,g(w)).$$

Then

$$\mathbb{B}^3 \setminus D_w(S) = \bigcup_{g \in S \setminus \{I\}} K(g(w),w)^\circ,$$

where $K(g(w),w)^\circ = \{ z \in \mathbb{B}^3 \mid \rho(z,g(w)) < \rho(z,w) \}$ is the interior of $K(g(w),w)$.

**Theorem 2.20.** Suppose that $S_1$ and $S_2$ are semidiscrete semigroups and $w$ is a point in $\mathbb{B}^3$ that is not fixed by any nontrivial element of $S_1$ or $S_2$. Suppose that $\mathbb{B}^3 \setminus D_w(S_2^{-1}) \subseteq D_w(S_1)$ and $\mathbb{B}^3 \setminus D_w(S_1^{-1}) \subseteq D_w(S_2)$. Then the semigroup $T$ generated by $S_1 \cup S_2$ is semidiscrete. Furthermore, if $S_1$ and $S_2$ are inverse free, then so is $T$.

**Proof.** Observe that, for $g \in S_1 \setminus \{I\}$ and $h \in S_2 \setminus \{I\}$, we have

$$K(g(w),w)^\circ \subseteq \mathbb{B}^3 \setminus D_w(S_1) \subseteq D_w(S_2^{-1}) \subseteq K(w,h^{-1}(w)),$$

which implies that $K(g(w),w)^\circ \subseteq K(w,h^{-1}(w))^\circ$. Hence $h(K(g(w),w)^\circ) \subseteq K(h(w),w)^\circ$, and similarly $g(K(h(w),w)^\circ) \subseteq K(g(w),w)^\circ$. It follows that $h$ maps $\mathbb{B}^3 \setminus D_w(S_1)$ into $\mathbb{B}^3 \setminus D_w(S_2)$, and $g$ maps $\mathbb{B}^3 \setminus D_w(S_2)$ into $\mathbb{B}^3 \setminus D_w(S_1)$. 

Next, observe that \( g(w) \in \mathbb{B}^3 \setminus D_w(S_1) \) and \( h(w) \in \mathbb{B}^3 \setminus D_w(S_2) \). Choose \( f \in T \setminus \{I\} \).

By writing \( f \) as a reduced word with letters from \( S_1 \) and \( S_2 \), we see that \( f(w) \) belongs to either \( \mathbb{B}^3 \setminus D_w(S_1) \) or \( \mathbb{B}^3 \setminus D_w(S_2) \). However, \( S_1 \) and \( S_2 \) are semidiscrete, so \( w \) is contained in the interior of both \( D_w(S_1) \) and \( D_w(S_2) \). It follows that \( T \) is semidiscrete.

Furthermore, if \( S_1 \) and \( S_2 \) are inverse free, then the same argument shows that no nontrivial reduced word with letters from \( S_1 \) and \( S_2 \) is equal to the identity element. Hence \( T \) is inverse free also.

Theorem 2.17 says that if \( S \) is countable, semidiscrete and inverse free, then \( e_w(S) \) has nonempty interior if and only if \( \Lambda^+(S) \neq S^2 \). This implies that if \( \Lambda^+(S) \neq S^2 \) and \( \Lambda^-(S) \neq S^2 \), then by Theorem 2.20 we can always choose another Möbius transformation \( f \) that does not lie in \( S \), such that the semigroup \( T = \langle \{f\} \cup S \rangle \) is semidiscrete and inverse free. The construction also shows that \( \Lambda^+(T) \) is contained in the Euclidean closure of \( (\mathbb{B}^3 \setminus D_w(S)) \cup K(f(w), w) \), and so we can choose \( f \) such that \( \Lambda^+(T) \neq S^2 \).

Theorem 2.20 can be used as a tool for modifying known semidiscrete semigroups to generate new semidiscrete semigroups, as the following example illustrates. Let \( S_1 = \langle f_0, f_1, f_2 \rangle \) and \( S_2 = \langle g_0, g_1, g_2 \rangle \), where each generator is defined by the parameters in the table following Figure 2.5. Both semigroups are semidiscrete and inverse free. The Dirichlet regions of \( S_1 \), \( S_1^{-1} \), \( S_2 \) and \( S_2^{-1} \) with respect to the point \( w = 0 \) are shown in the figures below. The Dirichlet region of \( S_1 \) (the complement of the red region) and \( S_1^{-1} \) (the complement of the blue region) are shown in Figure 2.3. The Dirichlet region of \( S_2 \) (the complement of the red region) and \( S_2^{-1} \) (the complement of the blue region) are shown in Figure 2.4. Notice that the red region in Figure 2.3 does not meet the blue region in Figure 2.4 although it does meet the red region in Figure 2.4. Similarly the red region in Figure 2.4 does not meet the blue region in Figure 2.3 although it does meet the red region in Figure 2.3. Hence, by the procedure described above, the semigroup \( S \) generated by \( S_1 \cup S_2 \) is also semidiscrete and inverse free. The Dirichlet regions of \( S \) (the complement of the red region) and of \( S^{-1} \) (the complement of the blue region), are depicted in Figure 2.5.
6. CONSTRUCTING NEW SEMIDISCRETE SEMIGROUPS FROM OLD

Figure 2.3. The generators of $S_1$ together with the Dirichlet regions of $S_1$ and $S_1^{-1}$

Figure 2.4. The generators of $S_2$ together with the Dirichlet regions of $S_2$ and $S_2^{-1}$
Figure 2.5. The generators of $S$ together with the Dirichlet regions of $S$ and $S^{-1}$

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transformation $h$</th>
<th>$\alpha_h$</th>
<th>$\beta_h$</th>
<th>$\text{tr}^2(h)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$f_0$</td>
<td>$e^{\pi i}$</td>
<td>$e^{0 \pi i}$</td>
<td>22.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$f_1$</td>
<td>$e^{0.25 \pi i}$</td>
<td>$e^{1.25 \pi i}$</td>
<td>22.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$f_2$</td>
<td>$e^{1.75 \pi i}$</td>
<td>$e^{0.75 \pi i}$</td>
<td>22.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$g_0$</td>
<td>$e^{0.5 \pi i}$</td>
<td>$e^{1.5 \pi i}$</td>
<td>202.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$g_1$</td>
<td>$e^{0.35 \pi i}$</td>
<td>$e^{0.65 \pi i}$</td>
<td>10.453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$g_2$</td>
<td>$e^{1.35 \pi i}$</td>
<td>$e^{1.65 \pi i}$</td>
<td>10.453</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 3

Semigroups that fix the unit circle

In this chapter we begin to present the main results of this thesis. Although many of the auxiliary results hold in all dimensions, most of the main results within this section apply only to subsemigroups of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$. Our arguments usually do not generalise to higher dimensions because Theorem 3.3 upon which other results rely, depends on the topological property that any connected subset of the ideal boundary consisting of at least two points contains a non-empty open subset. Nevertheless, some of our results do extend to subsemigroups of Möbius transformations that fix the unit circle. This means that we can include Möbius transformations that transpose the two connected components of $\mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{S}^1$, as well as those that fix both components.

The group of Möbius transformations that fix the unit circle, which we denote $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{S}^1)$, is significant in the theory of continued fractions because, thinking in the upper half-plane model, although $z \mapsto z + 1$ fixes the upper half-plane, the map $z \mapsto 1/z$ transposes the upper and lower half-planes. The unit circle in the complex plane identifies with the equator in the unit ball model. This means that, in the unit ball model, since any element of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{S}^1)$ fixes the equator it must also fix the Euclidean disc $\{(x, y, z) \in \mathbb{B}^3 \mid z = 0\}$ contained in $\mathbb{B}^3$ whose boundary is the equator. Indeed, $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{S}^1)$ is exactly the set of isometries (both orientation-preserving and orientation-reversing) of $\{(x, y, z) \in \mathbb{B}^3 \mid z = 0\}$ endowed with the hyperbolic metric inherited from $\mathbb{B}^3$. Each element of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{S}^1)$ either fixes the southern hemisphere (which corresponds to the unit disc in the complex plane) or transposes the northern and southern hemispheres. In this chapter we are concerned with subsemigroups of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$, however, by working in the ball model and considering the action of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{S}^1)$ on $\{(x, y, z) \in \mathbb{B}^3 \mid z = 0\}$, our arguments that do not require this action to be orientation-preserving (for example Theorem 3.1) also hold for subsemigroups.
We now survey the topics discussed within this chapter. In Section 2 we develop an understanding of composition sequences generated by finitely-generated semidiscrete subsemigroups of Aut($\mathbb{D}$). In particular we prove the following theorem.

**Theorem 3.1.** Let $S = \langle F \rangle$ be a finitely-generated subsemigroup of Aut($\mathbb{D}$). The following statements are equivalent:

(i) every composition sequence generated by $S$ is an escaping sequence;
(ii) every composition sequence generated by $S$ converges ideally;
(iii) $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free.
(iv) every composition sequence generated by $F$ is an escaping sequence;
(v) every composition sequence generated by $F$ converges ideally;

This tells us that for any semidiscrete subsemigroup of Aut($\mathbb{D}$), every composition sequence converges ideally if and only if the group part is empty. We also describe how composition sequences can behave when $S$ has a nonempty group part.

In Section 3 we give an algorithm for deciding whether or not a two-generator subsemigroup of Aut($\mathbb{D}$) is semidiscrete, semidiscrete and inverse free, or neither. Our methods also give a classification of semidiscrete two-generator semigroups (Theorem 3.20). Our strategy is similar to the geometric approach for classifying discrete two-generator groups initiated by Matelski [31] and others, and completed by Gilman [17]. However, our task is much simpler than that of classifying discrete two-generator groups. This is because by far the most difficult case in the groups classification arises when the two generators are loxodromic maps with intersecting axes. In contrast, the semigroup generated by two such maps is easily seen to be semidiscrete.

It is well known that any group of Möbius transformations is either elementary, Fuchsian, or dense in Aut($\mathbb{D}$). Section 4 is concerned with proving a counterpart of this result for subsemigroups of Aut($\mathbb{D}$). It has a similar statement, but with an additional category. Let $J$ be a nontrivial closed interval of $\mathbb{S}^1$. Throughout this chapter whenever we say ‘closed
interval’ we shall mean a nontrivial closed interval (that is nonempty, and not a single
point or the whole unit circle) contained in the unit circle. We define Möb(J) to be the
collection of Möbius transformations in Aut(𝔻) that map J within itself. Clearly Möb(J)
is a semigroup, which is not semidiscrete. We shall prove the following result.

**Theorem 3.2.** Let S be a subsemigroup of Aut(𝔻). Then S is either
(i) elementary,
(ii) semidiscrete,
(iii) contained in Möb(J), for some nontrivial closed interval J, or
(iv) dense in Aut(𝔻).

If S is finitely-generated, then most semigroups that are contained in Möb(J) for some
interval J (of type (iii)) are also semidiscrete (of type (ii)). There are some exceptions to
this, however; for example, (now using the upper half-plane model) the semigroup con-
tained in Aut(H2) and generated by the maps $z \mapsto \sqrt{2}z$, $z \mapsto \frac{1}{2}z$ and $z \mapsto z + 1$. This
semigroup is contained in Möb([0, +∞]), but it is not elementary, semidiscrete or dense in
Aut(H2). In Section 5, we will classify the small collection of finitely-generated semigroups
that are not of types (i), (ii) or (iv). We will see that S does not lie in this special collection
of semigroups if no two members of a generating set for S are loxodromic with the same
attracting and repelling fixed points. This version of Theorem 3.2 for finitely-generated
semigroups represents a significant generalisation of a result of Bárany, Beardon and Carne
[2, Theorem 3], who proved that any semigroup generated by two non-commuting trans-
f ormations, one of which is elliptic of infinite order (that is, an elliptic map $g$ for which
$g^n \neq I$ for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$), is dense in Aut(𝔻).

In Section 5 we prove another theorem which has a familiar counterpart in the theory of
Fuchsian groups. This counterpart theorem says that a nonelementary group of Möbius
transformations is discrete if and only if each two-generator subgroup of the group is
discrete. Our theorem only applies to finitely-generated subsemigroups of Aut(𝔻). Unfortu-
nately, there is also a bothersome class of semigroups that we must treat as exceptional
cases, which we now describe.
**Definition** Let $S$ be a semigroup that lies in $\text{M"{o}b}(J)$, for some closed interval $J$. Suppose that the collection of elements of $S$ that fix $J$ as a set forms a nontrivial discrete group. Suppose also that one of the other members of $S$ (outside this discrete group) fixes one of the end points of $J$. In these circumstances we say that $S$ is an *exceptional* semigroup; otherwise it is a *nonexceptional* semigroup.

These terms should be treated in a similar way to how we treat the terms *elementary* and *nonelementary* in the theory of groups or semigroups; that is, exceptional semigroups, like elementary groups or semigroups, are easy to handle, but do not obey all the laws satisfied by the more typical cases. We emphasise that it is easy to tell whether a finitely-generated semigroup is exceptional by examining its generating set, as we explain later. The main result of Section 5 is the following.

**Theorem 3.3.** Suppose $S$ is a finitely-generated nonexceptional semigroup $S$ contained in $\text{Aut}(D)$, that is not elementary of infinite type. Then $S$ is semidiscrete if and only if every two-generator semigroup contained in $S$ is semidiscrete.

We use the results on exceptional semigroups developed in this section to give a version of Theorem 3.2 for finitely-generated semigroups. This is Corollary 3.30 and can be regarded as a (coarse) classification of finitely-generated subsemigroups of $\text{Aut}(D)$.

Section 6 covers our final theorem, on limit sets of semigroups. There appears to be a relationship between the size of the intersection $\Lambda^+(S) \cap \Lambda^-(S)$ and the size of the group $S \cap S^{-1}$. For example, if $\Lambda^+(S) \cap \Lambda^-(S)$ is finite, then the group $S \cap S^{-1}$ is either empty or elementary (because if it is not elementary, then its limit set, which is contained in both $\Lambda^+(S)$ and $\Lambda^-(S)$, is perfect). The main result of this section is about when the intersection $\Lambda^+(S) \cap \Lambda^-(S)$ is large.

**Theorem 3.4.** Let $S$ be a finitely-generated nonelementary subsemigroup of $\text{Aut}(D)$. Then $\Lambda^+(S) = \Lambda^-(S)$ if and only if $S$ is a group.

In fact, we prove that if $\Lambda^-(S) \subseteq \Lambda^+(S)$, then $S$ is a group.
Before proceeding, we take a more detailed look at elementary subsemigroups of Aut(\(H^2\)), or equivalently elementary subsemigroups of Aut(\(\mathbb{H}^2\)), and in particular give the promised version of Theorem 1.7 from Chapter I which has been specialised to semigroups contained in Aut(\(H^2\)).

1. A closer look at elementary subsemigroups of Aut(\(H^2\))

**Theorem 3.5.** Let \(S\) be an elementary semigroup of finite type contained in Aut(\(H^2\)). Then \(S\) is conjugate in Aut(\(H^2\)) to a semigroup that is contained in one of the following sets, depending on \(|\Lambda^-|\) and \(|\Lambda^+|\):

(i) \(|\Lambda^-| = |\Lambda^+| = 0\): \(\{z \mapsto (az - b)/(bz + a) \mid a^2 + b^2 = 1\}\);

(ii) \(|\Lambda^-| = |\Lambda^+| = 1\): \(\{z \mapsto z + a \mid a \in \mathbb{R}\}\) or \(\{z \mapsto \lambda z \mid \lambda > 0\}\);

(iii) \(|\Lambda^-| = |\Lambda^+| = 2\): \(\{z \mapsto \lambda z, z \mapsto -\lambda/z \mid \lambda > 0\}\);

(iv) (a) \(|\Lambda^-| = 1, |\Lambda^+| = \infty\): \(\{z \mapsto az + b \mid a \leq 1, b \in \mathbb{R}\}\); (b) \(|\Lambda^-| = \infty, |\Lambda^+| = 1\): \(\{z \mapsto az + b \mid a \geq 1, b \in \mathbb{R}\}\).

The proof of this theorem is elementary, and similar to the proof of the classification of elementary semigroups of Möbius transformations given in [15, Theorem 2.11]. Accordingly, we only sketch a justification of the theorem.

**Proof of Theorem 3.5** Suppose that one of \(\Lambda^-\) and \(\Lambda^+\) is empty. Then \(S\) contains only elliptic transformations, which each fix a common point. If, by conjugation, we assume that the fixed point is \(i\), then \(S\) is contained in \(\{z \mapsto (az - b)/(bz + a) \mid a^2 + b^2 = 1\}\).

Suppose now that \(|\Lambda^+| = 2\). After conjugating, we can assume that \(\Lambda^+ = \{0, \infty\}\). Since \(\Lambda^+\) is forward invariant under \(S\), every element of \(S\) must either fix 0 and \(\infty\), or interchange them. The elements of Aut(\(\mathbb{D}\)) that fix both 0 and \(\infty\) have the form \(z \mapsto \lambda z, \lambda > 0\), and the elements of Aut(\(\mathbb{D}\)) that interchange 0 and \(\infty\) have the form \(z \mapsto -\lambda/z, \lambda > 0\). The former type are loxodromic (unless \(\lambda = 1\)) and the latter type are elliptic. Since \(\infty \in \Lambda^+\), it must be an attracting fixed point of some map \(z \mapsto \lambda z, \lambda > 1\). Hence \(0 \in \Lambda^-\), and similarly \(\infty \in \Lambda^-\). Therefore \(\Lambda^- = \{0, \infty\}\).

We are left to consider the cases when one of \(|\Lambda^-|\) or \(|\Lambda^+|\) has order 1. If both have order 1, then we are in case (ii); we omit the details. If only one has order 1, say \(|\Lambda^-| = 1\) (the other case is similar), then by conjugation we can assume that \(\Lambda^- = \{\infty\}\). The elements
of Aut(\mathbb{D}) that fix \infty have the form \( z \mapsto az + b \), where \( a > 0 \) and \( b \in \mathbb{R} \). If \( a > 1 \), then this map is loxodromic and has a *repelling* fixed point at \( b/(1 - a) \). As all repelling fixed points of loxodromic elements of \( S \) belong to \( \Lambda^- \), we see that \( S \) is of type (iv)(a). □

Later on we will require a more precise understanding of those finitely-generated semigroups of type (ii). The following lemma satisfies our needs: it classifies those semigroups that are contained in the group \( \{ z \mapsto z + a \mid a \in \mathbb{R} \} \). This task is the same as classifying additive semigroups of real numbers, and so some form of this lemma almost certainly features in the literature already.

**Lemma 3.6.** Let \( S \) be a semigroup generated by maps \( z \mapsto z + a_i, \ i = 1, \ldots, n \). Then exactly one of the following statements is true.

(a) Either \( a_i \geq 0 \) for \( i = 1, \ldots, n \) or \( a_i \leq 0 \) for \( i = 1, \ldots, n \), in which case \( S \) is semidiscrete.

(b) For every pair of indices \( i \) and \( j \), we have \( a_i/a_j \in \mathbb{Q} \), provided \( a_j \neq 0 \), and one of these quotients \( a_i/a_j \) is negative. In this case, \( S \) is a discrete group.

(c) Otherwise, there are two maps \( z \mapsto z + a_i \) and \( z \mapsto z + a_j \) that generate a dense subset of \( \{ z \mapsto z + a \mid a \in \mathbb{R} \} \).

**Proof.** In case (a), it is clear that \( S \) is semidiscrete.

In case (b), choose any of the numbers \( a_i \) (other than 0), and let \( a_j \) be of opposite sign to \( a_i \). Then \( ma_i = -na_j \) for some coprime positive integers \( m \) and \( n \). Choose positive integers \( u \) and \( v \) such that \( vn - um = \pm 1 \). Let \( \alpha = a_i/n = -a_j/m \). Then \( va_i + ua_j = \pm \alpha \).

It follows that \( S \) contains one of the maps \( z \mapsto z + \alpha \) or \( z \mapsto z - \alpha \). But \( S \) also contains \( z \mapsto z + na \) and \( z \mapsto z - ma \). So \( S \) must contain *both* \( z \mapsto z + \alpha \) and \( z \mapsto z - \alpha \), and in particular it must contain \( z \mapsto z - a_i \). Therefore \( S \) is a group, and one can use a short, standard argument from the theory of discrete groups to prove that \( S \) is discrete.

In case (b), we can choose a pair of nonzero numbers \( a_i \) and \( a_j \) such that \( a_i/a_j \notin \mathbb{Q} \). We can assume that \( a_i \) and \( a_j \) have opposite signs: if at first they do not, then replace one of them by another number \( a_k \) of the opposite sign (if you are careful about which of \( a_i \) and \( a_j \) you replace, then you can be sure that the quotient of the two numbers you end up with is irrational). Now let \( u_n/v_n \) be a sequence of rational numbers, where \( u_n, v_n > 0 \),
that satisfies
\[ \left| \frac{a_i}{a_j} + \frac{u_n}{v_n} \right| < \frac{1}{2v_n^2}. \]
Then \( |v_n a_i + u_n a_j| \to 0 \) as \( n \to \infty \), and we know that \( v_n a_i + u_n a_j \neq 0 \). From this we see that the maps \( z \mapsto z + v_n a_i + u_n a_j \) accumulate at the identity, so \( \langle z \mapsto z + a_i, z \mapsto z + a_j \rangle \) is not semidiscrete. □

The group \( \{ z \mapsto z + a \mid a \in \mathbb{R} \} \) considered in the lemma is the group of orientation-preserving Euclidean isometries of \( \mathbb{R} \). The other group in Theorem 3.5(ii) is \( \{ z \mapsto \lambda z \mid \lambda > 0 \} \), which is the group of orientation-preserving isometries of one-dimensional hyperbolic space \( \mathbb{I} \), which in this case is modelled by the positive imaginary axis. The metric spaces \( \mathbb{R} \) and \( \mathbb{I} \) are isometric using the transformation \( x \mapsto e^x \). It follows that the classification of finitely-generated semigroups of \( \{ z \mapsto \lambda z \mid \lambda > 0 \} \) is much the same as the classification of Lemma 3.6 if \( S \) is generated by maps \( z \mapsto \lambda_i z, i = 1, \ldots, n \), then we can define \( a_i = \log \lambda_i \) and cases (a)–(c) remain valid, with minor adjustments.

We have now examined class (ii) of Theorem 3.5 in detail. Let us briefly survey the other classes in turn, without proofs. Throughout our analysis we assume that \( S \) is a finitely-generated semigroup that is contained in a set \( G \), where \( G \) is specified for each class.

Class (i). Let \( G = \{ z \mapsto (az - b)/(bz + a) \mid a^2 + b^2 = 1 \} \). Then \( S \) is either dense in \( G \) or else it is a finite cyclic subgroup of \( G \).

Class (iii). Let \( G = \{ z \mapsto \lambda z, z \mapsto -\lambda/z \mid \lambda > 0 \} \). Assume that \( S \) contains a map of the form \( z \mapsto -\lambda/z \) (otherwise \( S \) has been dealt with already in class (ii)). Then \( S \) is a group, so either it is dense in \( G \) or else it is conjugate in \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{R}^3) \) to a discrete group generated by \( z \mapsto -1/z \) and \( z \mapsto \mu z \), where \( \mu > 1 \).

Class (iv)(a). Let \( G = \{ z \mapsto az + b \mid a \leq 1, b \in \mathbb{R} \} \). Define \( S_1 = \{ f(z) = z + b \mid f \in S \} \). Then \( S_1 \) is finitely-generated, so either it is empty, or else it is one of the types (a)–(c) determined in the first part of the analysis of class (ii), above. If \( S_1 \) is of type (c), then \( S \) is not semidiscrete, but it is not dense in \( G \). If \( S_1 \) is empty or of types (a) or (b), then \( S \) is a semidiscrete semigroup.

Class (iv)(b). This is similar to the previous case (switch between \( S \) and \( S^{-1} \) to move from one class to the other).
2. Proof of Theorem 3.1

In this section it is convenient to use the upper half-plane model of the hyperbolic plane, whose ideal boundary is the extended real line $\mathbb{R} = \mathbb{R} \cup \{\infty\}$. Before proving Theorem 3.1, we need a basic lemma.

**Lemma 3.7.** Suppose that $S$ is a semigroup generated by a finite set $F$ of Möbius transformations, and suppose that $F_n$ is an escaping composition sequence generated by $F$. Let $L = \Lambda_c^+(F_n)$. Then for any positive integer $m$, $F_m^{-1}(L) \subseteq \Lambda_c^+(S)$.

**Proof.** Let $p \in L$. Choose $\zeta \in \mathbb{H}^2$. Then there is a sequence of positive integers $n_1, n_2, \ldots$ such that the sequence $F_{n_i}(\zeta)$ converges conically to $p$. Hence the sequence $F_m^{-1}F_{n_i}(\zeta)$ converges conically to $F_m^{-1}(p)$. Now, if $n_i > m$, then $F_m^{-1}F_{n_i} \in S$, and so $F_m^{-1}(p) \in \Lambda_c^+(S)$, as required. \[\Box\]

The lemma remains true if we replace the forward conical limit sets with forward limit sets; however, we shall not need this alternative statement.

**Theorem 3.8.** Suppose that $S$ is a semigroup generated by a finite set $F$ contained in Aut($D$). Suppose also that there is an escaping composition sequence $F_n$ generated by $F$ that does not converge ideally. Then $\Lambda_c^+(S) = S^1$, unless $\Lambda_c^-(S) = \{q\}$ for some point $q$, in which case $\Lambda_c^+(S)$ is either equal to $S^1$ or to $S^1 \setminus \{q\}$.

**Proof.** Working in the upper half-plane model, choose any point $\zeta$ in $\mathbb{H}^2$. Let $k = \max\{\rho(\zeta, f(\zeta)) \mid f \in F\}$. We are given that the sequence $F_n(\zeta)$ accumulates, in the chordal metric, at two distinct points $a$ and $b$ in $\mathbb{H}$. Suppose there is a point $d$ other than $a$ and $b$ that is not a forward conical limit point of $F_n$. By conjugating $F_n$ if need be we can assume that $d = \infty$ and $a < b$. Let $\gamma_c$ be the hyperbolic geodesic with one end point $c$ inside $(a,b)$ and the other at $\infty$. Let $\Gamma_c = \{z \in \mathbb{H}^2 \mid \rho(z, \gamma_c) < k\}$. Notice that

$$\rho(F_n^{-1}(\zeta), F_n(\zeta)) = \rho(\zeta, F_n(\zeta)) \leq k.$$ 

It follows that infinitely many terms from the sequence $F_n(\zeta)$ lie in $\Gamma_c$. This infinite set inside $\Gamma_c$ cannot accumulate at $\infty$ because $\infty$ is not a forward conical limit point of $F_n$, so it must accumulate at $c$. Hence $c$ is a forward conical limit point of $F_n$. 

We have shown that \((a, b) \subseteq \Lambda_c^+(F_n)\). Choose a point \(y\) in \((a, b)\). Since \(\Lambda_c^-(F_n^{-1}) = \Lambda_c^+(F_n)\), we can apply Lemma 1.3 to deduce the existence of a sequence of positive integers \(n_1, n_2, \ldots\) and two distinct points \(p\) and \(q\) in \(\mathbb{R}\) such that \(F_n^{-1}(y) \rightarrow p\) and \(F_n^{-1}(z) \rightarrow q\) for \(z \neq y\). It follows that any point \(u\) in \(\mathbb{R} \setminus \{q\}\) is contained in \(F_n^{-1}(a, b)\), providing \(n_i\) is sufficiently large. Lemma 3.7 tells us that \(F_n^{-1}(a, b) \subseteq \Lambda_c^+(S)\), so we see that \(\mathbb{R} \setminus \{q\} \subseteq \Lambda_c^+(S)\).

Finally, suppose that \(\Lambda_c^-(S) \neq \{q\}\). If there exists an element \(f\) of \(S\) that does not fix \(q\), then \(q = f(v)\) for some point \(v\) in \(\mathbb{R} \setminus \{v\}\). As \(\Lambda_c^+(S)\) is forward invariant under \(S\), we see that it is the whole of \(\mathbb{R}\). Otherwise if every element of \(S\) fixes \(q\), then \(S\) contains a loxodromic element with attracting fixed point \(q\), in which case \(q \in \Lambda_c^+(S)\) and so again we have \(q \in \Lambda_c^+(S) = \mathbb{R}\). □

The exceptional case in which \(\Lambda_c^-(S) = \{q\}\) and \(\Lambda_c^+(S) = \mathbb{R} \setminus \{q\}\) certainly can arise. For example, let \(S = \langle z \mapsto \frac{1}{2}z, z \mapsto z + 1, z \mapsto z - 1 \rangle\). Clearly \(\Lambda_c^-(S) = \{\infty\}\), as all the generators of \(S\) fix \(\infty\), and \(\infty\) is a repelling fixed point of \(z \mapsto \frac{1}{2}z\). One can easily construct a composition sequence generated by \(S\) that is an escaping sequence that does not converge ideally, and one can check that \(\Lambda_c^+(S)\) contains \(\mathbb{R}\). However, \(\infty \notin \Lambda_c^+(S)\) because all elements of \(S\) have the form \(z \mapsto az + b\), where \(a \leq 1\) (and so the \(S\)-orbit of a point in \(\mathbb{H}^2\) cannot accumulate conically to \(\infty\)).

A Kleinian group \(G\) is said to be cocompact if its quotient space \(\mathbb{H}^3/G\) is compact, or equivalently, if \(G\) has a compact fundamental region. We can now prove the main result of this section, from which we will deduce Theorem 3.1.

**Theorem 3.9.** Let \(S = \langle F \rangle\) be a finitely-generated semidiscrete subsemigroup of \(\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})\) such that \(|\Lambda_c^-(S)| \neq 1\). Then the following statements are equivalent:

(i) every composition sequence generated by \(F\) that is an escaping sequence converges ideally;

(ii) \(S\) is not a cocompact Fuchsian group.

**Proof.** Suppose first that \(S\) is a cocompact Fuchsian group. Then it has a finite-sided compact fundamental polygon \(D\) and the images of \(D\) under \(S\) tessellate \(\mathbb{D}\). Choose \(z_0\) in the interior of \(D\) and suppose \(f_1(D), f_2(D), \ldots, f_k(D)\) are the neighbouring tiles of \(D\). Let
Let \( D_0 = D, D_1, D_2, \ldots \) be a sequence of tiles such that \( D_i \) is adjacent to \( D_{i+1} \) for each \( i \). Let \( z_i \) be the point of \( S(z_0) \) that lies in \( D_i \). We can choose the sequence \( D_i \) so that the sequence \( z_i \) accumulates at two points of the unit circle \( S^1 \), but does not accumulate in \( \mathbb{D} \). For each \( n \geq 0 \) there exists a unique element \( g_n \in S \) such that \( g_n(D) = D_n \). The neighbours of \( D_n \) are \( g_n(f_i(D)) \), and one of these is \( D_{n+1} = g_{n+1}(D) \), and so \( g_{n+1} = g_n f_{i_{n+1}} \) for some \( i_{n+1} \in \{1, \ldots, k\} \). Therefore \( g_n = f_{i_1} \cdots f_{i_n} \) defines a composition sequence generated by the finite set \( \mathcal{F} = \{f_1, \ldots, f_k\} \). Since \( g_n(z_0) = z_n \), the sequence is escaping but does not converge ideally.

Suppose, conversely, that there is a composition sequence generated by \( \mathcal{F} \) that is an escaping sequence but does not converge ideally. By Theorem 3.8, we see that \( \Lambda^+_h(S) = S^1 \). Hence \( \Lambda^+_h = S^1 \) and so Corollary 2.15 then tells us that \( S \) is a group with a compact Dirichlet region: it is a cocompact Fuchsian group.

Suppose \( \mathcal{F} \) is a finite subset of \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{D}) \) that generates a semidiscrete semigroup \( S \) such that \( |\Lambda^-(S)| \neq 1 \). Further suppose that \( S \) is not a cocompact Fuchsian group. If \( F_n = f_1 \cdots f_n \) is a composition sequence generated by \( \mathcal{F} \), then there are two cases: either \( F_n \) escapes, or not. If \( F_n \) escapes, then it converges ideally by Theorem 3.9. Otherwise \( F_n \) does not escape, and for all large enough \( n \) each \( f_n \) belongs to the group part of \( S \). To see this, we have by Lemma 2.6 that along some subsequence \( n_k \), the sequence \( F_{n_k} \) converges to a Möbius transformation. Hence, as in the proof of Theorem 2.7 \( F_{n_k}^{-1} F_{n_k+1} \) converges to the identity. Since \( S \) is semidiscrete, this means that \( F_{n_k}^{-1} F_{n_k+1} = f_{n_k+1} \cdots f_{n_k+1} \) is equal to the identity for all large enough \( k \). It follows that for all large enough \( n \), each \( f_n \) lies in the group part of \( S \).

Theorem 3.9 fails if we remove the hypothesis \( |\Lambda^-(S)| \neq 1 \); we have seen an example of this already, just before the statement of the theorem. Let us now use this theorem to prove Theorem 3.1.

**Proof of Theorem 3.1** The equivalence of (i) and (iii) was established already in Theorem 2.7. That (ii) implies (i) is immediate. The most substantial part of Theorem 3.1 is the implication of (ii) from (iii).
Suppose then that $S$ is an inverse free semidiscrete semigroup, generated by a finite set $\mathcal{F}$. We must prove that every composition sequence generated by $S$ converges ideally. By the equivalence of (i) and (iii), we know that every composition sequence generated by $S$ is an escaping sequence. If we regard any composition sequence generated by $S$ as a subsequence $F_{n_k}$ of a composition sequence $F_n$ generated by $\mathcal{F}$, then Theorem 3.9 tells us that, provided $|\Lambda^-(S)| \neq 1$, $F_n$ converges ideally, and so $F_{n_k}$ also converges ideally. In the special case where $|\Lambda^-(S)| = 1$ we can assume, by conjugating, that $\Lambda^-(S) = \{\infty\}$. Now by examining Class (iv)(a) in Theorem 3.5 we see that there is a real number $a$, such that all elements of $S$ either map the interval $(-\infty, a)$ within itself, or map the interval $(a, +\infty)$ within itself. Either way Theorem 3.8 tells us that every composition sequence generated by $S$ that is an escaping sequence must converge ideally.

We see that (i) and (iv) are equivalent by Theorem 2.7. To show that (v) and (ii) are equivalent we argue just as in the proof of Theorem 2.7: any composition sequence generated by $S$ is a subsequence of some composition sequence generated by $\mathcal{F}$, and so (v) implies (ii). Conversely since $\mathcal{F} \subseteq S$ it follows that (ii) implies (v).

### 3. Two-generator semigroups

In this section we classify the semidiscrete two-generator subsemigroups of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$, and we determine which of them are Fuchsian groups and which are inverse free semigroups. This section can be thought of as a version of Gilman and Maskit’s paper [18] for semidiscrete semigroups. There, the authors give an algorithm that determines whether or not a two-generator subgroup of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ is discrete, which omits the more complicated case of two loxodromic generators with intersecting axes, which Gilman deals with in [17]. This section relates only to subsemigroups of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$, and so throughout all Möbius transformations are understood to be of this type. The task of classification is simpler if we handle elementary two-generator semigroups separately to the main classification of two-generator semigroups.

**Theorem 3.10.** The semigroup $S = \langle g, h \rangle$ generated by two nontrivial Möbius transformations $g$ and $h$ in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ is elementary if and only if

(i) $g$ and $h$ have a common fixed point in $\overline{\mathbb{D}}$; or
(ii) $g$ and $h$ are both elliptic of order 2; or
(iii) one of $g$ and $h$ is loxodromic and the other is elliptic of order 2, and the fixed point of the elliptic generator lies on the axis of the loxodromic generator.

Proof. To begin note that if $f \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ fixes $w \in \overline{\mathbb{C}}$ then it also fixes $1/w$. We will work through the cases listed in Theorem 1.5.

If $S$ fixes a point $x$ in $\mathbb{H}^3$ then $S$ consists of elliptic transformations. The axis of any elliptic transformation in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ has ideal endpoints $w$ and $1/w$ for some $w$ in $\mathbb{D}$. So $S$ consists of elliptic transformations that fix the unique point $w$ in $\mathbb{D}$ such that the geodesic that ends at $w$ and $1/w$ passes through $x$, and we are in case (i).

Suppose $S$ is elementary but does not fix any point in $\mathbb{H}^3$. Then either $S$ fixes a single point $w$ in $\overline{\mathbb{C}}$ or a pair of points $v, w$ in $\overline{\mathbb{C}}$. In the first case, $w$ must lie on the unit circle, since $1/w$ is also fixed by $S$, so again we are in case (i). In the second case, we cannot have $v = 1/w$ because then $v$ would be in $\mathbb{D}$ and $w \not\in \mathbb{D}$ or vice versa, and $S$ would fix pointwise the geodesic joining $v$ and $w$ in $\mathbb{H}^3$. We must therefore have $v = 1/w$ and $w = 1/w$, so $v$ and $w$ are on the unit circle. Either $g$ and $h$ both fix $v$ and $w$, so we are in case (i) or they both exchange $v$ and $w$, so we are in case (ii), or one fixes them and the other exchanges them, so we are in case (iii).

There are examples of semigroups of both finite and infinite type in case (i) however every semigroup in case (ii) and case (iii) are of finite type. Using Theorem 3.10 it is straightforward to decide which two-generator elementary semigroups of finite type are semidiscrete and which are inverse free. The only two-generator elementary semigroups that are of infinite type are described in the following proposition, and are all semidiscrete and inverse free.

**Theorem 3.11.** Suppose $g$ and $h$ are two nontrivial Möbius transformations in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ that generate an elementary semigroup of infinite type. Then $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free.

Proof. Suppose $g$ and $h$ are nontrivial Möbius transformations in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ and that $S = \langle g, h \rangle$ is an elementary semigroup of infinite type. By the comments following Theorem 1.5 both $g$ and $h$ fix some point $w$ in $\overline{\mathbb{C}}$. If $w$ is not on the unit circle, then $S$ fixes a
point in the unit disc (either $w$ or $1/w$), and so both limit sets are empty, contrary to our assumption that $S$ is of infinite type. Hence $w$ lies on the unit circle and both generators are not elliptic transformations. If at least one of $g$ or $h$ is a parabolic transformation, then it is easy to see that at least one of $\Lambda^+(S)$ or $\Lambda^-(S)$ is equal to \{w\}. Hence both $g$ and $h$ are loxodromic maps. If $w = \alpha_g = \alpha_h$ or $w = \beta_g = \beta_h$, then again, one of the limit sets of $S$ is equal to \{w\}. If the set of fixed points of $g$ is equal to the set of fixed points of $h$, then both $\Lambda^+(S)$ and $\Lambda^-(S)$ are contained in this set of fixed points. Since $S$ is of infinite type, it follows that either $S$ or $S^{-1}$ is conjugate in Aut($\mathbb{B}^3$) to the configuration shown in Figure 3.1.

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.2\textwidth]{figure_3.1.png}
\caption{The axes of $g$ and $h$}
\end{figure}

It now suffices to show that if the generators of $S$ are configured as in Figure 3.1, then $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free. Choose a point $z$ in the component of $S^1 \setminus \{\beta_g, \alpha_h\}$ that does not contain the common fixed point $\alpha_g = \beta_h$. Let $J$ be the closed interval bounded by $z$ and the common fixed point $\alpha_g = \beta_h$ that contains $\alpha_h$. Both $g$ and $h$ map $J$ strictly within itself, and so by Theorem 2.5, $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free.

Now we have classified all two-generator semigroups in the cases where the generators have fixed points in common. We now proceed to consider two-generator semigroups for which any point fixed by one generator is not fixed by the other. We first consider the case where at least one generator is elliptic. Clearly $S$ cannot be both semidiscrete and inverse free. However, if exactly one generator is elliptic and of finite order, and the composition of the two generators is not elliptic, then we have an example of a two-generator semidiscrete semigroup whose group part and inverse free part are both nonempty (see case (b) in...
Theorem 3.12. In fact, examples of this type are the only two-generator semidiscrete semigroups whose group part and inverse free part are both nonempty. Throughout the rest of this section it is convenient to denote the group part of $S$, that is $S \cap S^{-1}$, by $G$.

**Theorem 3.12.** Suppose $S = \langle g, h \rangle$ where $g$ is not elliptic and $h$ is elliptic. Then exactly one of the following is true:

(a) $h$ has infinite order and $S$ is not semidiscrete;

(b) $h$ has finite order, $gh^k$ is not elliptic for any $k = 0, \ldots, \text{order}(h) - 1$, and $S$ is semidiscrete;

(c) $h$ has finite order, and for some $k \in \{0, \ldots, \text{order}(h) - 1\}$ the element $gh^k$ is an elliptic transformation of infinite order, and $S$ is not semidiscrete;

(d) $h$ has finite order, and for some $k \in \{0, \ldots, \text{order}(h) - 1\}$ the element $gh^k$ is an elliptic transformation of finite order, and $S$ is the group generated by $g$ and $h$.

Moreover any two-generator semidiscrete semigroup whose group part and inverse free part are both nonempty must arise from case (b).

**Proof.** Suppose $h$ is elliptic and $g$ is either loxodromic or parabolic. If $h$ has infinite order, then $S$ is not semidiscrete and we have case (a). Now suppose $h$ is of finite order, and by conjugating if necessary, we can suppose $h$ has fixed point 0. Let $m$ be the order of $h$. We can replace $h$ with $h^d$, where $d$ and $m$ are coprime, without affecting $\langle g, h \rangle$. Therefore we can assume that the angle of rotation of $h$ is $2\pi/m$.

If $g$ is loxodromic, choose $\ell_\gamma$ to be the unique geodesic that is perpendicular to the axis of $g$ and passes through 0. Let $\ell_\alpha$ be the unique geodesic that is perpendicular to the axis of $g$ and such that $g = \alpha \gamma$, where $\alpha$ and $\gamma$ denote reflection in $\ell_\alpha$ and $\ell_\gamma$ respectively.

If $g$ is parabolic, choose $\ell_\gamma$ to be the unique geodesic that passes through 0 and lands at the fixed point of $g$. Let $\ell_\alpha$ be the unique geodesic that lands at the fixed point of $g$ and such that $g = \alpha \gamma$, where again $\alpha$ and $\gamma$ denote reflection in $\ell_\alpha$ and $\ell_\gamma$ respectively.

Now let us choose $\beta$ to be the (unique) reflection such that $h = \gamma \beta$. Let $\ell_\beta$ denote the line of reflection of $\beta$, and note that the angle between $\ell_\beta$ and $\ell_\gamma$ is $\pi/m$. We define $\ell_{\beta_k}$ to be
the geodesic line passing through 0 obtained by rotating $\ell_\gamma$ by an angle of $k\pi/m$, and let $\beta_k$ denote reflection in $\ell_\beta_k$. Note that $\beta_0 = \gamma$, $\beta_1 = \beta$ and $h^k = \beta_k\beta_0$.

There are now two possibilities, either $\ell_\alpha$ cuts $\ell_\beta_k$ in $D$ for some $k = 0, \ldots, m - 1$, or otherwise. In the latter case, for some $k$ the line $\ell_\alpha$ is contained in a sector of angle $\pi/m$ subtended between $\ell_\beta_k$ and $\ell_\beta_{k+1}$. Let $\Gamma = \langle \beta_k, \beta_{k+1}, \alpha \rangle$ and let $q$ denote whichever of $k$, $k + 1$ is even. Since $\beta_0 = h^{-q/2}\beta_q h^{q/2}$ and $h = \beta_{k+1}\beta_k \in \Gamma$, it follows that $g = \alpha\beta_0$ must lie in $\Gamma$. Hence we have $S \subseteq \Gamma$. By Poincaré’s Polygon Theorem 3.15, the shaded region bounded by $\ell_\beta_k$, $\ell_\beta_{k+1}$ and $\ell_\alpha$ shown in Figure 3.2 is a fundamental region for $\Gamma$. Since $\Gamma$ is discrete $S$ is semidiscrete, and so we have case (b).

Figure 3.2. Fundamental region for $\Gamma$

Now let $Y$ denote the closed arc contained in $S^1$ whose end points are end points of $\ell_\beta_k$ and $\ell_\beta_{k+1}$, and which contains the end points of $\ell_\alpha$. Let $X = Y \cup h(Y) \cup \cdots \cup h^{m-1}(Y)$. Then $X$ is a nontrivial closed subset of $S^1$ that satisfies $h(X) = X$ and, since $g = \alpha\beta_0$, satisfies $g(X) \subseteq Y$. It follows that $\langle g, h \rangle$ is not equal to the group generated as a group by $g$ and $h$.

Earlier in the proof we assumed that $\ell_\alpha$ did not meet $\ell_\beta_k$ in $D$ for any $k = 0, \ldots, m - 1$. Now suppose that $\ell_\alpha$ meets $\ell_\beta_k$ in $D$. It follows that $gh^k = \alpha\beta_k$ is elliptic. If $gh^k$ has infinite order, then $S$ is not semidiscrete and we have case (c). Otherwise we are left with the case where $h$ and $gh^k$ are elliptic elements of finite order. Since $g = gh^k h^{m-k}$, it follows that $S$ is equal to $\langle h, gh^k \rangle$. This means that $S$ is generated by two finite order
elliptic transformations, and so \( S \) is a group. This group is equal to the group generated by \( g \) and \( h \), and we have case (d).

Finally, we suppose \( S = \langle g, h \rangle \) is an arbitrary semidiscrete semigroup with nonempty group and inverse free parts. By Lemma 2.2 we know that the group part is generated by just one of the transformations \( g \) or \( h \) – let us say \( h \). Therefore \( h \) must be elliptic of finite order. As \( \langle g, h \rangle \) is semidiscrete and has group part \( \langle h \rangle \), the element \( g \) cannot be elliptic; it must be loxodromic or parabolic. Furthermore, the map \( gh^k \) cannot be elliptic for any \( k \), otherwise \( \langle h, gh^k \rangle \) is a group and is equal to \( S \). We are now left with the possibility described in case (b).

We emphasise that in case (d) of the theorem above, \( S \) is a group and so \( S \) is semidiscrete if and only if the group generated by the elliptic transformations \( g \) and \( gh^k \) (for appropriate \( k \)) is discrete. Whether or not this is the case can be determined by the Gilman-Maskit algorithm detailed in [18].

We now consider two-generator semigroups where both generators are not elliptic and the generators’ fixed points do not coincide. It is useful to describe a pair of transformations \( g, h \) as antiparallel if neither is elliptic, the set of fixed points of \( g \) is disjoint from the set of fixed points of \( h \), and no proper closed interval of the unit circle whose end points are fixed points of \( g \) or \( h \) is mapped strictly within itself by either \( g \) or \( h \). Intuitively this means that \( g \) and \( h \) ‘point’ in opposite directions. Figure 3.3 shows the three possible configurations of the transformations (up to conjugation in Aut(\( \mathbb{D} \)) and replacement of \( S \) with \( S^{-1} \)). The horoballs in the last two diagrams represent parabolic elements which fix the horoballs setwise, and move points on the horoball in the direction indicated.

The following theorem handles the remaining cases where \( g \) and \( h \) are not antiparallel.

**Theorem 3.13.** If \( g \) and \( h \) are both not elliptic, are not antiparallel, and \( S = \langle g, h \rangle \) is nonelementary, then \( S \) is semidiscrete and inverse free.
Figure 3.3. Possible configurations of antiparallel transformations $g$ and $h$

**Proof.** By first replacing $S$ by $S^{-1}$ if necessary, the generators of $S$ are conjugate to one of the possibilities shown in Figure 3.4.

In each case it is easy to identify a closed interval contained in the unit circle that is mapped strictly inside itself by both generators, and so $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free by Theorem 2.5.

It remains for us to classify two-generator semigroups that are nonelementary and have antiparallel generators. We give two theorems that can be used as the basis for an algorithm that can determine whether or not a semigroup generated by two antiparallel transformations $g$ and $h$ is semidiscrete, semidiscrete and inverse free, or neither. In principle, given $g$ and $h$, an upper bound for the runtime of the algorithm can be computed before execution. In fact we show that when $g$ and $h$ are antiparallel, $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free if and only if and only $S$ contains no elliptic maps, and in that case the group generated by $g$ and $h$ is itself discrete and elliptic-free. The following lemma records an observation that we shall use repeatedly.

**Lemma 3.14.** Suppose $S = \langle g, h \rangle$ where neither of $g, h$ is an elliptic element of finite order. If $S$ contains an elliptic element of finite order, then $S$ is equal to the group generated by $g$ and $h$. 

Proof. Suppose \( f \in S \) is elliptic of order \( n = 2, 3, \ldots \). Written as a word in \( g \) and \( h \), \( f \) is not a power of \( g \) nor a power of \( h \), and so the word contains both the letters \( g \) and \( h \). Since \( f^n = I \), we have a word in both letters \( g \) and \( h \) that equals the identity. Without loss of generality we can suppose that \( f \) takes the form \( f = gf_1 \), where \( f_1 \) is a nonempty word. Then \((gf_1)^n = I\) and so \( g^{-1}f_1(gf_1)^{n-1} \in S \). Since the letter \( h \) features in the word \( f \) and \( g^{-1} \in S \), we can similarly deduce that \( h^{-1} \in S \). It follows that \( S = G \). \( \square \)

As a consequence of the above, whenever we encounter an elliptic element in \( S \) we can check if \( S \) is semidiscrete as follows. Either the elliptic element is of infinite order, and so \( S \) is not semidiscrete, or the elliptic element has finite order, in which case \( S = G \) by Lemma 3.14 and \( S \) is semidiscrete exactly when \( G \) is discrete. In the latter case we can appeal to the algorithm given in [18] to decide if \( G \) is discrete or not.

Our next theorem deals with the more straightforward case where at least one of \( g \) or \( h \) is parabolic. In order to prove it we shall make use of Poincaré’s Polygon Theorem [3 Theorem 9.8.4], which we now describe.

Let \( P \) be a convex polygon, that is a hyperbolically convex subset of \( \mathbb{D} \) whose boundary can be written as the finite union of non-trivial geodesic segments and connected subsets of \( S^1 \). The geodesic segments may land on the ideal boundary at both ends, one end, or neither end. A side of \( P \) is a maximal subset of the boundary of \( P \) that is either contained within a geodesic segment, or a connected subset of \( S^1 \). A vertex of \( P \) is any end point of one of the sides of \( P \), which may lie in \( S^1 \) or in \( \mathbb{D} \). A vertex that lies on \( S^1 \) is called an ideal vertex. A side-pairing transformation of \( P \) is a hyperbolic isometry \( g_s \) (not necessarily orientation preserving), that maps one side \( s \) of \( P \) bijectively to another side \( t \) such that \( g_s(P) \cap P = t \).

Theorem 3.15. Poincaré’s Polygon Theorem. Let \( P \) be a polygon in \( \mathbb{D} \) equipped with a set of side-pairing transformations, \( g_s \), one for each side of \( P \), such that \( g_t = g_s^{-1} \) if \( g_s \) pairs \( s \) with \( t \). Suppose there exists \( \epsilon > 0 \) with the following properties.

(i) For each vertex \( x_0 \in \mathbb{D} \) there are vertices \( x_1, \ldots, x_n \) of \( P \) and hyperbolic isometries \( f_0, \ldots, f_{n+1} \) such that \( f_0 = f_{n+1} = I \) and for each \( j = 0, \ldots, n \) there is a side \( s \) such that \( f_{j+1} = f_j g_s \). Further suppose that if \( N_j = \{ z \in P \mid \rho(x_j, z) < \epsilon \} \) then
the sets \( f_j(N_j) \) do not overlap and have union \( B(x_0, \epsilon) \).

(ii) For each ideal vertex \( y_0 \) of \( P \) there are ideal vertices \( y_1, \ldots, y_n \) of \( P \) and hyperbolic isometries \( f_0, \ldots, f_{n+1} \) such that \( f_0 = f_{n+1} = I \) and for each \( j = 0, \ldots, n \) there is a side \( s \) of \( P \) such that \( f_{j+1} = f_j g_s \) and \( f_j(N'_j) \) are contiguous and do not overlap, where \( N'_j = \{ z \in P \mid |y_j - z| < \epsilon \} \).

Then the group \( G \) generated by the side-pairing transformations \( g_s \) is discrete, \( P \) is a fundamental region for \( G \), and each relation of \( G \) arises from a vertex in \( \mathbb{D} \) and finite composition of its associated maps \( f_0, \ldots, f_{n+1} \) that fixes \( P \) equated with the identity.

Notice that if all the side-pairing transformations for polygon \( P \) are orientation preserving, and all the vertices of \( P \) are ideal, then the group generated by the side-pairing transformations has no non-trivial relations: it is a free group.

We shall make use of the following lemma in both the subsequent theorem and in Theorem 3.19.

**Lemma 3.16.** Suppose \( g_1 = g \) and \( h_1 = h \) are Möbius transformations, and \( n_j \) is a sequence of positive integers. Further suppose we have finite sequences \( g_1, \ldots, g_k \) and \( h_1, \ldots, h_k \) that satisfy \( \{ g_{j+1}, h_{j+1} \} = \{ g_j^{n_j} h_j, g_j^{n_j+1} h_j \} \) for \( j = 1, \ldots, k - 1 \). If the group generated by \( g_k \) and \( h_k \) is free, then the semigroup \( \langle g, h \rangle \) does not contain the identity.

**Proof.** Let \( G_j \) be the group generated by \( g_j \) and \( h_j \). Clearly \( G_{j+1} \subseteq G_j \). Since

\[
g_j = (g_j^{n_j+1} h_j)(g_j^{n_j} h_j)^{-1}
\]

and

\[
h_j = g_j^{-n_j} (g_j^{n_j} h_j),
\]

we see that \( G_j \subseteq G_{j+1} \). Hence \( G_j = G_1 \) for each \( j \). If a group is free, then it is freely generated by any choice of generators. It follows that since \( G_k \) is free, so is \( G_1 \), and in particular, the semigroup generated by \( g \) and \( h \) does not contain the identity. \( \square \)

We remark that the conclusion of the lemma holds if the assumption \( \{ g_{j+1}, h_{j+1} \} = \{ g_j^{n_j} h_j, g_j^{n_j+1} h_j \} \) is replaced with \( \{ g_{j+1}, h_{j+1} \} = \{ h_j g_j^{n_j}, h_j g_j^{n_j+1} \} \).
Theorem 3.17. Suppose $g$ and $h$ are antiparallel Möbius transformations, and $h$ is parabolic. Then $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free if and only if $gh^n$ is not elliptic for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Moreover, exactly one of the following is true.

(a) The map $gh^n$ is not elliptic for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, in which case $S$ is free and the group generated by $g$ and $h$ is discrete and elliptic-free;

(b) for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the map $gh^n$ is an elliptic transformation of infinite order and $S$ is not semidiscrete; or

(c) for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the map $gh^n$ is an elliptic transformation of finite order, and $S$ is a group that is semidiscrete precisely when $S$ is a discrete group.

Proof. We first consider the case where $g$ is parabolic. Let $\ell$ be the geodesic landing at the fixed points of $g$ and $h$, and denote the reflection in $\ell$ by $\sigma$. We can choose a geodesic $\ell_g$ such that $g = \sigma_g\sigma$ where $\sigma_g$ is the reflection in $\ell_g$, and geodesic $\ell_h$ such that $h = \sigma\sigma_h$ where $\sigma_h$ is the reflection in $\ell_h$. Since $g$ and $h$ are antiparallel, $\ell$ does not separate $\ell_h$ from $\ell_g$ in $\mathbb{D}$. Since $h$ and $g$ are parabolic, $\ell_g$ and $\ell_h$ land at the fixed points of $g$ and $h$ respectively. We have the two cases shown in Figure 3.5: either $\ell_g$ meets $\ell_h$ in the unit disc, or not.

If $\ell_g$ and $\ell_h$ do meet in the unit disc, then $gh = \sigma_g\sigma_h$ fixes the point of intersection, and so $gh$ is an elliptic map. If $gh$ is elliptic of infinite order, then $S$ is not semidiscrete and we have case (b). Otherwise $gh$ has finite order, in which case Lemma 3.14 tells us that $S$ is a group. Hence $S$ is semidiscrete exactly when $S$ is a discrete group, and we fall into case (c).

Otherwise the geodesics $\ell, \ell_h$ and $\ell_g$ bound a region $U$ in $\mathbb{D}$, and we show that we have the situation describe by case (a). By Poincaré’s Polygon Theorem 3.15, if $\Gamma$ is the group of conformal and anticonformal Möbius transformations generated by the reflections $\sigma, \sigma_g$
and $\sigma_h$, then $\Gamma$ is discrete and contains the group generated by $S$. It follows that $S$ is semidiscrete. We note that $U \cup \sigma(U)$ is a fundamental polygon for the group generated by $S$, which we denote by $T$, and each vertex lies on the ideal boundary. It follows from Poincaré’s theorem that $T$, and so $S$ itself, does not contain any elliptic elements. Since there are no nontrivial vertex relations, Poincaré’s theorem further shows that $T$ is free as a group generated by $g$ and $h$, and hence $S$ is free as a semigroup generated by $g$ and $h$. It follows that $gh^n$ is not elliptic for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Indeed, $S$ is a Schottky semigroup, and so does not contain the identity. To see this, let $J_g$ be the closed interval on the unit circle whose end points are those of $\ell_g$ and that does not contain the fixed point of $h$. Similarly let $J_h$ be the closed interval on the unit circle whose end points are those of $\ell_h$ and that does not contain the fixed point of $g$, as shown in Figure 3.6.

![Figure 3.6](image)

**Figure 3.6.** The domain $U$ with intervals $J_g$ and $\sigma(J_h)$

Both $g$ and $h$ map $J_g \cup \sigma(J_h)$ strictly within itself, and so $S$ is a Schottky semigroup, as claimed.

We now consider the case where $g$ is loxodromic and $h$ is parabolic. Staying in the unit disc model, we conjugate so that $i$ is the fixed point of $h$ and the imaginary axis is perpendicular to the axis of $g$. We let $\sigma$ denote the reflection in the imaginary axis, and choose $\sigma_g$ such that $g = \sigma_g\sigma$. For each $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ we let $\sigma_n$ be the reflection such that $h^n = \sigma\sigma_n$. Note that $\sigma = \sigma_0$. We let $\ell, \ell_g$ and $\ell_n$ denote the lines of reflection of $\sigma, \sigma_g$ and $\sigma_n$ respectively. We discriminate between two cases: either $\sigma_g$ and $\sigma_n$ meet in $\mathbb{D}$ for some $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, or not. If they do meet, then $gh^n = \sigma_g\sigma_n$ is an elliptic transformation,
and, just as in the case where both $g$ and $h$ were parabolic, we have case (b) if $gh^n$ has infinite order and case (c) if $gh^n$ has finite order.

Otherwise $\sigma_g$ and $\sigma_n$ do not meet in $\mathbb{D}$ for each $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$. It follows that for some $n$ the lines $\ell_n$, $\ell_g$ and $\ell_{n+1}$ bound a region $U$, as shown in Figure 3.7. We show that $S$ is described by case (a). By Poincaré’s Polygon Theorem 3.15 the group $\Gamma = \langle \sigma_n, \sigma_{n+1}, \sigma_g \rangle$ is discrete, with fundamental region $U$. Moreover since all the vertices of $U$ are ideal, the only relations on $\Gamma$ are the trivial ones: $\sigma_n^2 = \sigma_{n+1}^2 = \sigma_g^2 = 1$. Let $T$ be the group generated by $gh^{n+1}$ and $gh^n$. Certainly $T \subseteq \Gamma$, and since $T$ is orientation preserving it does not contain $\sigma_n$, $\sigma_{n+1}$ or $\sigma_g$. It follows that $T$ has no nontrivial relations, in other words, $T$ is a free group. It now follows from Lemma 3.16 and the remarks following its proof that $S$ does not contain the identity. To see that $S$ is semidiscrete, note that $\sigma_{k-1} = \sigma_k \sigma_{k+1} \sigma_k$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$, hence by induction both $\sigma_0$ and $\sigma_1$ lie in $\Gamma$. It follows that both the generators $g$ and $h$ also lie in $\Gamma$, and so $S$ is semidiscrete since $\Gamma$ is discrete. Finally, since the group generated by $g$ and $h$ is orientation preserving and contained in $\Gamma$, it must be free, and in particular, contains no elliptic transformations.

In the case where $h$ is parabolic and $g$ loxodromic, we remark that it is not necessary to test whether or not $gh^n$ is an elliptic transformations for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$, in order to determine which of the cases (a), (b), or (c) our semigroup $\langle g, h \rangle$ falls into. Indeed, for a particular $g$ and $h$, the proof gives the basis of an algorithm that identifies the largest such $n$ we must test. If both $g$ and $h$ are parabolic, then $n = 1$ suffices; we only need to
verify whether or not $gh$ is an elliptic map.

Our next task is to treat the case where $g$ and $h$ are both loxodromic and antiparallel. We first require a result on the geometry of quadrilaterals, which can be found in [3, Theorem 7.17.1].

**Lemma 3.18.** Consider the quadrilateral with side lengths $b_1, a_2, a_1$ and $b_2$, listed in the anticlockwise sense. Let $\phi$ denote the angle between $b_1$ and $b_2$, and suppose all the other internal angles are right angles.

Then we have:

(i) $\sinh a_1 \sinh a_2 = \cos \phi$, and 

(ii) $\cosh a_1 = \cosh b_1 \sin \phi$.

**Theorem 3.19.** Suppose $g, h$ are two antiparallel loxodromic maps. Then $S = \langle g, h \rangle$ is semidiscrete and inverse free if and only if $S$ is elliptic-free. Moreover, whenever $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free:

(i) the group generated by $g$ and $h$ is discrete and elliptic-free; and 

(ii) we can find two elements in $S$ that generate $G$, and $G$ is a free group.

If $S$ does contain an elliptic element, then either $S$ is not semidiscrete, or $S = G$ and $G$ is discrete.

**Proof.** We work in the disc model. By applying a conjugation if necessary, we can assume that the axes of $g$ and $h$ are symmetrical about both the real and imaginary axes, as is the case in both examples of Figure 3.8. Let $\ell$ be the geodesic contained in the imaginary axis that cuts the axes of both $g$ and $h$ orthogonally, and let $\sigma$ be the reflection in $\ell$. There exists a unique geodesic $\ell_g$ orthogonal to the axis of $g$ such that $g = \sigma_g \sigma$ (where $\sigma_g$ is the reflection in $\ell_g$) and a unique geodesic $\ell_h$ orthogonal to the axis of $h$ such
that \( h = \sigma \sigma_h \) (where \( \sigma_h \) is the reflection in \( \ell_h \)). Since elliptic maps are characterised by the existence of fixed points inside \( \mathbb{D} \), it follows \( gh = \sigma g \sigma_h \) is elliptic exactly when \( \ell_g \) and \( \ell_h \) meet in \( \mathbb{D} \).

For a loxodromic Möbius transformation \( f \), let \( \rho(f) \) denote half its translation length and let \( ax(f) \) denote the axis of \( f \). Hence \( \rho(g) \) and \( \rho(h) \) are the (hyperbolic) distances from \( \ell \) to \( \ell_g \) and from \( \ell \) to \( \ell_h \), respectively. Without loss of generality we suppose \( \rho(h) \geq \rho(g) \).

There are two cases to consider, which are shown in Figure 3.8: either \( \ell_h \) meets \( ax(g) \) in \( \mathbb{D} \), or otherwise.

![Figure 3.8.](image)

Suspending for now our assumption that \( \rho(h) \geq \rho(g) \), we say that any pair of antiparallel transformations \( g \) and \( h \) is \textit{decidable} if, after conjugating so that their axes enjoy the symmetry shown in Figure 3.8, either \( \ell_h \) does not meet \( ax(g) \) in \( \mathbb{D} \) (they may meet on the ideal boundary) or \( \ell_g \) does not meet \( ax(h) \) in \( \mathbb{D} \). We use the term ‘decidable’ because whenever \( \{ g, h \} \) has this property, it is relatively easy to determine if \( S \) is semidiscrete and inverse free, using a procedure that we now describe. In fact we show that when \( \{ g, h \} \) is decidable and \( \rho(h) \geq \rho(g) \), then \( S \) is semidiscrete and inverse free if and only if \( g^n h \) is not elliptic for any \( n \in \mathbb{N} \). To prove this, we use similar ideas to those used in the proof of Proposition 3.17. For each \( n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \) consider the geodesic \( \ell_n \) orthogonal to \( ax(g) \) such that \( g^n = \sigma_n \sigma \). Note that \( \ell_0 = \ell \), \( \ell_1 = \ell_g \) and that the (hyperbolic) distance from \( \ell \) to \( \ell_n \) is \( n \rho(g) \). Since \( \{ g, h \} \) is decidable and \( \rho(h) \geq \rho(g) \), then \( \ell_h \) does not meet \( ax(g) \).

If for some \( n \in \mathbb{N} \) the two geodesics \( \ell_n \) and \( \ell_h \) meet in \( \mathbb{D} \), then \( g^n h = \sigma_n \sigma_h \) is elliptic. Otherwise for some least \( n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \), the lines \( \ell \), \( \ell_{n+1} \) and \( \ell_h \) bound a region in \( \mathbb{D} \). We
Figure 3.9. The lines \( \ell, \ell_n, \ell_{n+1} \) and \( \ell_h \), and the region \( U \), for the decidable case

now apply Poincaré’s theorem to the region \( U \) bounded by \( \ell_n, \ell_{n+1} \) and \( \ell_h \) (see Figure 3.9), and infer that the group \( \Gamma \) of conformal and anticonformal maps generated by \( \sigma_n, \sigma_{n+1} \) and \( \sigma_h \) is discrete. As the orientation-preserving subgroup of \( \Gamma \), \( G \) is discrete and so \( S \) is semidiscrete. The region \( U \cup \sigma_n(U) \) is a fundamental region for \( G \), and by considering the action of \( g^n h \) and \( g^{n+1} h \) on \( U \cup \sigma_n(U) \), it follows from Poincaré’s theorem that \( G \) is freely generated as a group by \( g^n h \) and \( g^{n+1} h \), and moreover contains no elliptic elements. (The semigroup may contain parabolic elements, for example if either of \( \ell_n \) or \( \ell_{n+1} \) meet \( \ell_h \) on the ideal boundary.) It now follows from Lemma 3.16 that \( S = \langle g, h \rangle \) does not contain the identity. The preceding discussion can be used as the basis for an algorithm that determines whether or not a decidable pair of antiparallel Möbius transformations generates a semidiscrete and inverse free semigroup. More importantly the above helps to establish a more general algorithm that applies when the transformations are not decidable, which is the case we consider next.
For antiparallel Möbius transformations $g$ and $h$ we define the following quantity

$$d(g, h) = \sinh[\max(\rho(h), \rho(g))] \cdot \sinh[\rho(ax(g), ax(h))] - \frac{1}{2}.$$ 

By considering the shaded quadrilateral in Figure 3.10, it follows from an application of Lemma 3.18 that $\ell_h$ does not meet $ax(g)$ in $\mathbb{D}$ precisely when

$$\sinh[\rho(h)] \cdot \sinh[\rho(ax(g), ax(h))] \geq 1.$$ 

Hence $\{g, h\}$ is decidable precisely when $d(g, h) \geq 1$.

In the case where $g$ and $h$ are not decidable, we proceed as follows: We let $(g_0, h_0) = (g, h)$ and construct a finite sequence $(g_0, h_0), (g_1, h_1), \ldots, (g_m, h_m)$ for some $m \in \mathbb{N}$. For each $k = 0, \ldots, m$ the maps $g_k$ and $h_k$ are loxodromic and antiparallel elements of $S$, and generate $G$ as a group. Suppose $(g_k, h_k)$ has been constructed. We show that either:

(i) $g_k^n h_k$ is elliptic for some positive integer $n$; or
(ii) at least one of $g_k$ and $h_k$ is parabolic; or
(iii) $d(g_k, h_k) \geq 1$; or
(iv) we can find antiparallel $g_{k+1}, h_{k+1} \in S$ that generate $G$ as a group, and satisfy

$$d(g_{k+1}, h_{k+1}) > d(g_k, h_k)/(1 - d(g_k, h_k)^2).$$ 

If at any stage in the construction we encounter case (i), then $S$ is not semidiscrete and inverse free. In case (ii) we can appeal to Proposition 3.17 and conclude that either $S$ contains an elliptic map, or the group generated by $g_k$ and $h_k$, which by construction is $G$ itself, is discrete and freely generated by $g_k$ and $h_k$. In the latter case, by invoking
Lemma 3.16 we see that \( I \notin S \) and therefore \( S \) is semidiscrete and inverse free. Similarly in case (iii) we have \( d(g_k, h_k) \geq 1 \), so that \( \{g, h\} \) is decidable. This means we can use the procedure described above to either conclude that \( S \) contains an elliptic element, or that \( G \) is discrete and freely generated by \( g_k \) and \( h_k \). Hence \( S \) is semidiscrete and, by Lemma 3.16, is also inverse free. In case (iv) we can continue the sequence and find antiparallel loxodromic maps \( g_{k+1}, h_{k+1} \in S \) that generate \( G \) as a group. The sequence must terminate because if \( d_k \) is a sequence such that \( 0 < d_k < 1 \) and \( d_{k+1} > d_k/(1 - d_k^2) \), then \( d_k \) cannot remain in \((0, 1)\) for all \( k \). Moreover if \( m \) is the least positive integer such that \( d_m \) is not in \((0, 1)\), then \( d_m \geq 1 \). This means that we cannot continue constructing the sequence \( (g_k, h_k) \) indefinitely without meeting one of the cases (i), (ii) or (iii).

If at any point of the algorithm we encounter an elliptic element, it is of finite or infinite order. If the elliptic element has infinite order then \( S \) is not semidiscrete. Otherwise the elliptic element has finite order, and so \( S = G \) by Lemma 3.14 and so \( S \) is semidiscrete if and only if \( G \) is discrete. A finite time algorithm that determines whether or not \( G \) is discrete is given in [18]. Conversely if \( G \) is discrete then every elliptic element in \( G \) has finite order, and hence the same is true of \( S \). This proves the last sentence in the statement of the theorem.

It remains to show that \( (g_k, h_k) \) can be constructed as claimed. For clarity of exposition we take \( k = 0 \) so that \( g = g_0 \) and \( h = h_0 \). As in the decidable case, we let \( \ell_n \) be the geodesic orthogonal to \( ax(g) \) such that \( g^n = \sigma \sigma_n \), and so \( g^n h = \sigma h \sigma_n \). If \( \ell_n \) meets \( \ell_h \) for some \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), then \( g^n h \) is elliptic and we have case (i). Another possibility is that \( \ell_h \) meets either of \( \ell_n \) or \( \ell_{n+1} \) on the ideal boundary. In this case \( g^n h \) and \( g^{n+1} h \) can be seen to be antiparallel, and are either both parabolic, or one is parabolic and one loxodromic. In these cases we can appeal to Proposition 3.17 and infer that either \( S \) contains an elliptic map, or \( G \) is discrete and elliptic-free. Otherwise for some \( n \), \( \ell_h \) separates \( \ell_n \) from \( \ell_{n+1} \), and \( g^n h \) and \( g^{n+1} h \) are both loxodromic (see Figure 3.11). We let \( (g_1, h_1) = (g^n h, g^{n+1} h) \) and set \( n_1 \) equal to \( n \). Since \( g^n h = \sigma_n \sigma_h \), its axis is orthogonal to both \( \ell_n \) and \( \ell_h \). Similarly \( g^{n+1} h = \sigma_{n+1} \sigma_h \) so that its axis is orthogonal to \( \ell_{n+1} \) and \( \ell_h \). It can be seen from
the geometry that \( g^n h \) and \( g^{n+1} h \) are antiparallel. To verify this, observe that \( \text{ax}(g^n h) \) is the mutual perpendicular of \( \ell_n \) and \( \ell_h \), and, since \( g^n h = \sigma_n \sigma_h \), we have \( g^n h \) parallel with \( h \). Similarly \( g^{n+1} h \) is parallel with \( g \). Since the axes of \( g^n h \) and \( g^{n+1} h \) are both orthogonal to \( \ell_h \), if they were to meet in \( \mathbb{D} \) then they must be equal setwise, so we must have \( \sigma_h(\ell_n) = \ell_{n+1} \). But this cannot be, for then \( \text{ax}(g) \), as the mutual perpendicular of \( \ell_n \) and \( \ell_{n+1} \), must be perpendicular to \( \ell_h \). (This is more clear upon considering Figure 3.11 and conjugating so that \( \ell_h \) is a Euclidean diameter.) Since \( g = (h g^n)^{-1}(h g^{n+1}) \), the element \( g \) belongs to the group generated by \( g^n h \) and \( g^{n+1} h \), and so \( h \) also belongs to this group. Hence \( g^n h \) and \( g^{n+1} h \) generate \( G \) as a group.

For points \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) in \( \mathbb{D} \) we let \([\alpha, \beta]\) denote the geodesic line joining \( \alpha \) to \( \beta \), and we abbreviate \( \rho(\alpha, \beta) \) to \( \rho_{\alpha \beta} \). Notice that \([u, v]\) is contained in \( \text{ax}(g^{n+1} h) \) and \([y, x]\) is contained
in \( ax(g^n h) \). With \( g_1 = g^n h \) and \( h_1 = g^{n+1} h \) we want to find

\[
d(g_1, h_1) = \sinh[\max(\rho(g^{n+1} h), \rho(g^n h))], \sinh[\rho(ax(g^n h), ax(g^{n+1} h))].
\]

We have \( \rho(ax(g^n h), ax(g^{n+1} h)) = \rho_{cy} + \rho_{cb} + \rho_{bw} \) and \( \rho(g^{n+1} h) = \rho_{xy} \leq \max(\rho(g^{n+1} h), \rho(g^n h)) \). Hence to prove \( d(g_1, h_1) > d(g_0, h_0)/(1 - d(g_0, h_0)^2) \) it suffices to show that

\[
(5) \quad \sinh[\rho_{cy} + \rho_{cb} + \rho_{bw}] \sinh[\rho_{xy}] > d_0/(1 - d_0^2).
\]

In order to proceed we consider the geometry of several hyperbolic quadrilaterals found within the figure above and repeatedly apply Lemma 3.18. Considering the quadrilateral \( czyx \) we have

\[
(6) \quad \cosh \rho_{cy} \sin \psi = \cosh \rho_{zx}
\]

and

\[
(7) \quad \sinh \rho_{zx} \sinh \rho_{xy} = \cos \psi.
\]

Considering the quadrilateral \( pqcb \) we have

\[
(8) \quad \cosh \rho = \cosh \rho_{cb} \sin \psi,
\]

where \( \rho = \rho(ax(g), ax(h)) \). Finally, considering the quadrilateral \( abuv \) we obtain

\[
(9) \quad \cos \phi = \sinh \rho_{uv} \sinh \rho_{bv}.
\]

Equations (6) and (7) yield

\[
(10) \quad \cosh \rho_{cy} = \frac{1}{\sin \psi} \sqrt{\frac{\cos^2 \psi}{\sinh^2 \rho_{xy}} + 1}
\]

and so

\[
(11) \quad \sinh \rho_{cy} = \frac{1}{\tan \psi \tanh \rho_{xy}}.
\]

We can now express \( \sinh(\rho_{cy} + \rho_{cb} + \rho_{bw}) \) in terms of \( \sinh \) or \( \cosh \) of \( \rho_{cy}, \rho_{cb} \) and \( \rho_{bw} \), and eliminate these terms using equations (11), (8) and (9) above.
We have
\[
\sinh(\rho_{cy} + \rho_{cb} + \rho_{bv}) = \sinh \rho_{cy} (\cosh \rho_{cb} \cosh \rho_{bv} + \sinh \rho_{cb} \sinh \rho_{bv}) + \\
\cosh \rho_{cy} (\sinh \rho_{cb} \cosh \rho_{bv} + \sinh \rho_{bv} \cosh \rho_{cb}) \\
\geq \sinh \rho_{cy} \cosh \rho_{cb} \cosh \rho_{bv} \\
= \frac{1}{\tan \psi \tanh \rho_{xy} \sin \psi} \sqrt{\frac{\cos^2 \phi}{\sinh^2 \rho_{uv} + 1}} \\
\geq \frac{\cosh \rho_{xy} \cos \psi}{\sin^2 \psi \sinh \rho_{xy}},
\]
and so
\[
\sinh(\rho_{cy} + \rho_{cb} + \rho_{bv}) \sinh \rho_{xy} > \frac{d_0}{(1 - d_0^2)} \cosh \rho_{xy} \cosh \rho \\
> \frac{d_0}{(1 - d_0^2)}
\]
as required. \qed

It follows from Theorem 3.19 that if \(g\) and \(h\) are antiparallel loxodromic Möbius transformations, then \(S = \langle g, h \rangle\) is semidiscrete if and only if \(S\) is contained in a discrete group. This is not true when \(g\) and \(h\) are not antiparallel. Some of the ideas used in the proof above are taken from \([18]\); however, the proof given there uses the fact that if the group generated by \(g\) and \(h\) is discrete and nonelementary, then Jørgensen’s inequality (see \([3, \text{Theorem 5.4.1}]\)) is satisfied. That is,
\[
|\text{tr}^2(g) - 4| + |\text{tr}(ghg^{-1}h^{-1}) - 2| \geq 1.
\]

We could not assume Jørgensen’s inequality, since it was not clear beforehand that if \(S\) is semidiscrete and generated by two antiparallel loxodromic Möbius transformations, then \(S\) is contained in a discrete group. Neither was it clear beforehand how to determine whether or not \(S\) contains an elliptic map; indeed, if \(S\) does contain an elliptic map, then the proof of Theorem 3.19 can be used to find one such map explicitly.

Theorem 3.19 also has relevance to the study of groups, for it serves as a test to determine whether or not the group generated by two loxodromic transformations with disjoint axes
is discrete and elliptic-free, without making use of Jørgensen’s inequality.

We now collate results obtained in this section into the following theorem.

**Theorem 3.20.** Suppose the semigroup $S = \langle g, h \rangle$ is nonelementary. Then $S$ is semidiscrete if and only if:

(i) exactly one of $g$ and $h$ is elliptic (say $h$), $h$ has finite order, and $gh^k$ is not elliptic for each $k \in \{0, \ldots, \text{order}(h) - 1\}$; or

(ii) $S$ is a Fuchsian group; or

(iii) $g$ and $h$ are not elliptic and not antiparallel; or

(iv) $g$ and $h$ are antiparallel, and $S$ is elliptic-free.

These cases are mutually exclusive. The results in this section and their proofs collectively constitute a basis for an algorithm that decides whether or not $g$ and $h$ generate a semidiscrete semigroup $S$. Moreover, it can be determined into which of these four cases $S$ belongs. Theorem 3.20 also classifies those nonelementary two-generator semigroups that are semidiscrete and inverse free – these are exactly the cases (iii) and (iv). Case (i) describes a rather small class of semigroups, and is dealt with in Theorem 3.12.

**Proof.** Since $S$ is nonelementary the set of fixed points of $g$ is disjoint from the set of fixed points of $h$. Suppose now that at least one of $g$ and $h$ is elliptic. If both $g$ and $h$ are elliptic and one has infinite order, then $S$ is not semidiscrete. Otherwise both have finite order and $S = G$. Hence $S$ is semidiscrete precisely when $G$ is discrete, which can be determined by the Gilman-Maskit algorithm given in [18]. If exactly one generator is elliptic then we examine cases (a)–(d) in Theorem 3.12. In cases (a) and (c), $S$ is not semidiscrete. Case (b) exactly describes case (i) above. In case (d), both $g$ and $h$ are elliptic elements of finite order and $S$ is a group. Either $S$ is a Fuchsian group, which is case (ii), or otherwise $S$ is not discrete, and hence $S$ is not semidiscrete.

It remains to consider the cases where both generators are either parabolic or loxodromic and have disjoint sets of fixed points. We consider separately the cases where $g$ and $h$
are antiparallel, and otherwise. If \( g \) and \( h \) are not antiparallel then we have the situation described in Theorem 3.13. Otherwise \( g \) and \( h \) are antiparallel, and the procedure described in the proof of Theorem 3.17 (when at least one of \( g \) or \( h \) is parabolic), or Theorem 3.19 (when \( g \) and \( h \) are both loxodromic), can decide whether or not \( S \) is semidiscrete, semidiscrete and inverse free, or neither. If \( S \) is not semidiscrete and inverse free then the procedure identifies an elliptic transformation in \( S \). If this elliptic transformation is of infinite order then \( S \) is not semidiscrete. Otherwise \( S = G \) and we must again defer to the Gilman-Maskit algorithm detailed in [18] in order to determine whether or not \( G \) is discrete.

4. Proof of Theorem 3.2

In this section we prove Theorem 3.2 as well as other results that we shall need later. Our first theorem has a well known counterpart in the theory of Fuchsian groups. Recall that \( \alpha_f \) and \( \beta_f \) denote the attracting and repelling fixed points (respectively) of a loxodromic Möbius transformation \( f \).

**Theorem 3.21.** Suppose that \( S \) is a semigroup of Möbius transformations that includes loxodromic elements and is not elementary of infinite type. Then for every pair of open subsets \( U \) and \( V \) of \( S^2 \) such that \( U \) meets \( \Lambda^+(S) \) and \( V \) meets \( \Lambda^-(S) \), there is a loxodromic element of \( S \) with attracting fixed point in \( U \) and repelling fixed point in \( V \).

**Proof.** First suppose that \( S \) is elementary. Then by Proposition 1.7, \( S \) is one of the types (c), (d), (e) or (f) as stated in the proposition. By inspection and using Theorem 1.8 (i), it can be seen that each of these elementary semigroups satisfies the conclusion of this theorem.

Now suppose that \( S \) is not elementary. By Theorem 1.8 there are loxodromic maps \( f \) and \( g \) in \( S \) such that \( \alpha_f \in U \) and \( \beta_g \in V \), and since \( \Lambda^+(S) \) is perfect we can assume that \( \alpha_f \neq \beta_g \). If either \( \alpha_g \in U \) or \( \beta_f \in V \), then we have found a loxodromic map of the required type. Suppose instead that \( \alpha_g \notin U \) and \( \beta_f \notin V \). For the moment, let us assume also that \( \beta_f \neq \alpha_g \) (so that no two of \( \alpha_f, \beta_f, \alpha_g \) and \( \beta_g \) are equal). We can choose pairwise disjoint open intervals \( A_f, B_f, A_g \) and \( B_g \) such that \( \alpha_f \in A_f, \beta_f \in B_f, \alpha_g \in A_g, \beta_g \in B_g \), and moreover \( A_f \subsetneq U \) and \( B_g \subsetneq V \). Now let \( n \) be a sufficiently large positive integer
such that \( f^n \) maps the complement of \( B_f \) into \( A_f \), and \( f^{-n} \) maps the complement of \( A_f \) into \( B_f \). Suppose also that \( n \) is large enough such that \( g^n \) maps the complement of \( B_g \) into \( A_g \), and \( g^{-n} \) maps the complement of \( A_g \) into \( B_g \). One can now check that the map \( h = f^n g^n \) satisfies \( h(A_f) \subsetneq A_f \) and \( h^{-1}(B_g) \subsetneq B_g \). Hence \( h \) is a loxodromic element of \( S \) that satisfies \( \alpha_h \in U \) and \( \beta_h \in V \), as required.

It remains to consider the case where \( \beta_f = \alpha_g \) (and, as before, \( \alpha_f, \beta_f \) and \( \beta_g \) are pairwise distinct). Since \( S \) is nonelementary there is an element \( s \) of \( S \) that maps \( \beta_f \) to a point outside the set \( \{ \alpha_f, \beta_f, \beta_g \} \). Let \( k_n = sg^n \). Then \( k_n \) is loxodromic for sufficiently large values of \( n \). Moreover, \( \alpha_{k_n} \to s(\alpha_g) \) and \( \beta_{k_n} \to \beta_g \) as \( n \to \infty \). Choose \( n \) such that \( \alpha_f, \beta_f, \alpha_{k_n} \) and \( \beta_{k_n} \) are pairwise distinct, and \( \beta_{k_n} \in V \). We can now apply the argument of the preceding paragraph with \( k_n \) replacing \( g \) to obtain a loxodromic element of \( S \) with the desired properties. \( \square \)

The assumption that \( S \) includes loxodromic elements and is not elementary of infinite type, is equivalent to assuming that \( S \) is not an elementary semigroup of type \( (a), (b) \) or \( (g) \) as described in Proposition 1.7. In particular Theorem 3.2 holds for all nonelementary semigroups.

A Gromov hyperbolic metric space is a metric space within which we can draw triangles and these triangles are always ‘thin’. More precisely, a Gromov hyperbolic metric space enjoys the following properties. Firstly, every two points in the space are the end points of some minimizing geodesic. This means that for each set of three distinct points in the space we can associate a ‘triangle’ whose vertices are the three points, and whose three edges are the minimizing geodesics between each pair of vertices. Finally, there exists \( \delta > 0 \) such that for each triangle every point on one of its sides lies a distance at most \( \delta \) from some point on one of the other two sides. In [12 Proposition 7.4.7], the authors show that an analogous version of Theorem 3.2 holds when \( S \) is a semigroup of isometries of a Gromov hyperbolic metric space. The same paper also gives a generalisation of Theorem 1.4 (see [12 Proposition 7.3.1]).
3. SEMIGROUPS THAT FIX THE UNIT CIRCLE

Let us now consider three special families of Möbius transformations in \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{H}^2) \), namely

(i) \( z \mapsto (az - b)/(bz + a), \ a^2 + b^2 = 1; \)

(ii) \( z \mapsto \lambda z, \ \lambda \geq 1; \)

(iii) \( z \mapsto z + \mu, \ \mu \geq 0. \)

Each of these is a one-parameter semigroup. The first consists of all elliptic rotations about \( i \), the second consists of loxodromic transformations with attracting fixed point \( \infty \) and repelling fixed point 0, and the third is a collection of parabolic transformations that fix \( \infty \) (and the identity is contained in each family too). We will prove that, up to conjugacy, any closed semigroup that is not semidiscrete contains one of these families.

However, there is a caveat here: we must allow conjugacy not just by elements of \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{H}^2) \), but by Möbius transformations that transpose the upper and lower half-planes. Elements of \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{H}^2) \) are maps of the form \( z \mapsto (az + b)/(cz + d) \), where \( a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{R} \) and \( ad - bc > 0 \); we also allow conjugation by maps of the same form but with negative determinant, that is \( ad - bc < 0 \). We shall denote the collection of these maps by \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{R}) \), since each such transformation fixes the extended real line. The reason we need to conjugate by transformations in \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{R}) \), rather than just \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{H}^2) \), is to simplify the treatment of case (iii); after all, the two semigroups \( \{ z \mapsto z + \mu \mid \mu \geq 0 \} \) and \( \{ z \mapsto z + \mu \mid \mu \leq 0 \} \) are conjugate by \( z \mapsto -z \), but they are not conjugate in \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{H}^2) \). In the next lemma, and indeed throughout this thesis, we write \( \overline{S} \) to mean the closure of \( S \) in \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{R}) \).

**Lemma 3.22.** Let \( S \) be a closed semigroup that is not semidiscrete. Then \( S \) is conjugate by an element in \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{R}) \) to a semigroup that contains one of the families (i), (ii) or (iii).

**Proof.** As \( S \) is not semidiscrete, there is a sequence \( g_n \) in \( S \setminus \{ I \} \) that converges uniformly to \( I \), the identity. Suppose first that this sequence contains infinitely many loxodromic elements. By passing to a subsequence, we can assume that every map \( g_n \) is loxodromic. Let \( \alpha_n \) and \( \beta_n \) be the attracting and repelling fixed points of \( g_n \), respectively. By passing to a further subsequence of \( g_n \), we can assume that the sequences \( \alpha_n \) and \( \beta_n \) both converge. Suppose for now that they converge to distinct values, which, after conjugating \( S \), we can assume are \( \infty \) and 0, respectively. Let \( h_n \) be any sequence of Möbius transformations that satisfies \( h_n(0) = \alpha_n, \ h_n(\infty) = \beta_n \) and \( h_n \to I \) as \( n \to \infty \). Define \( k_n = h_n^{-1} g_n h_n \); this map has repelling fixed point 0 and attracting fixed point \( \infty \),
so \( k_n(z) = \lambda_n z \), where \( \lambda_n > 1 \). Furthermore, \( k_n \to I \) as \( n \to \infty \) (so \( \lambda_n \to 1 \)). Now select any number \( \lambda > 1 \), and define \( f(z) = \lambda z \). By passing to yet another subsequence of \( g_n \) if necessary, we can assume that \( \lambda_n < \lambda \) for \( n = 1, 2, \ldots \). For each positive integer \( n \), the sequence \( \lambda_n, \lambda_n^2, \lambda_n^3, \ldots \) is strictly increasing with limit \( \infty \). Define \( t_n \) to be the unique positive integer such that \( \lambda \in [\lambda_n^{t_n}, \lambda_n^{t_n+1}] \). Let \( f_n = k_n^{t_n} \). Notice that \( f_n(1) = \lambda_n^{t_n} \) and \( f(1) = \lambda \). Also,

\[
\chi(f_n(1), f(1)) \leq \chi(k_n^{t_n}(1), k_n^{t_n+1}(1)) \leq \sigma(k_n^{t_n}, k_n^{t_n+1}) = \sigma(I, k_n).
\]

Since \( f_n \) fixes 0 and \( \infty \) for each \( n \), we see that \( f_n(1) \to f(1), f_n(0) \to f(0) \) and \( f_n(\infty) \to f(\infty) \) as \( n \to \infty \), so \( f_n \to f \). Therefore, in this case, the family of type (ii) is contained in our semigroup.

Near the start of the preceding argument we assumed that the sequences \( \alpha_n \) and \( \beta_n \) converged to distinct values. Let us resume the argument from that point, but this time assume that \( \alpha_n \) and \( \beta_n \) converge to the same value, which, after conjugating \( S \) if need be, we can assume is \( \infty \). Let \( h_n \) be any sequence of Möbius transformations that satisfies \( h_n(\infty) = \beta_n \) and \( h_n \to I \) as \( n \to \infty \). Define \( k_n = h_n^{-1} g_n h_n \); this map has attracting fixed point \( \infty \). Let \( \delta_n \) be the repelling fixed point of \( k_n \). Then \( \delta_n \to \infty \) as \( n \to \infty \). By passing to a subsequence of \( g_n \) if need be, we can assume that the numbers \( \delta_n \) all have the same sign, which, after conjugating by \( z \mapsto -z \) if need be, we can assume is negative. We can write \( k_n(z) = \lambda_n(z - \delta_n) + \delta_n \), where \( \lambda_n > 1 \). As before, \( k_n \to I \) as \( n \to \infty \) (so \( \lambda_n \to 1 \)). Now select any number \( \mu > 0 \), and define \( f(z) = z + \mu \). By passing to yet another subsequence of \( g_n \) if necessary, we can assume that \( k_n(0) = \delta_n(1 - \lambda_n) < \mu \) for \( n = 1, 2, \ldots \). For each positive integer \( n \), the sequence \( k_n(0), k_n^2(0), k_n^3(0), \ldots \) is strictly increasing with limit \( \infty \). Define \( t_n \) to be the unique positive integer such that \( \mu \in [k_n^{t_n}(0), k_n^{t_n+1}(0)] \). Let \( f_n = k_n^{t_n} \). Then

\[
\chi(f_n(0), f(0)) \leq \chi(k_n^{t_n}(0), k_n^{t_n+1}(0)) \leq \sigma(I, k_n).
\]

Hence \( f_n(0) \to f(0) \); that is, \( \delta_n(1 - \lambda_n^{t_n}) \to \mu \). Since \( \delta_n \to \infty \), we see that \( \lambda_n^{t_n} \to 1 \). Hence, for any real number \( x \),

\[
f_n(x) = \lambda_n^{t_n} x + \delta_n(1 - \lambda_n^{t_n}) \to x + \mu \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty.
\]
So \( f_n \to f \). Therefore, in this case, the family of type (iii) is contained in our semigroup.

We began this proof by choosing a sequence \( g_n \) in \( S \setminus \{ I \} \) such that \( g_n \to I \), and supposing that there were infinitely many loxodromic maps in this sequence. If there are infinitely many parabolic maps in the sequence, then we can carry out an argument similar to those we have given already to show that a conjugate of \( S \) contains the family of type (iii). The remaining possibility is that almost all the maps \( g_n \) are elliptic, in which case we may as well assume that they are all elliptic. If any one of them is elliptic of infinite order, then we obtain the family of type (i) (up to conjugacy) by considering the closure of the semigroup generated by that map alone. If infinitely many of the maps \( g_n \) share a fixed point, then it is straightforward to see that \( S \) is conjugate to a semigroup that contains the family of type (i). The only other possibility is that the maps \( g_n \) have infinitely many different fixed points. By passing to a subsequence of \( g_n \), we can assume that the fixed points of \( g_n \) are pairwise distinct. Let \( h_n = g_n g_{n+1} g_n^{-1} g_{n+1}^{-1} \). Since the maps \( g_n \) are of finite order, \( h_n \) is an element of \( S \), and \( h_n \to I \) as \( n \to \infty \). Furthermore, one can easily check that \( h_n \) is loxodromic, so by the earlier arguments we see that the closure of our semigroup contains one of the families of types (ii) or (iii).

For an elliptic map \( h \in \text{Aut}(H^2) \) let \( \text{fix}(h) \) denote its unique fixed point in \( H^2 \) and let \( \theta(h) \in [0, 2\pi) \) be its angle of rotation. Each of the families (i), (ii) and (iii) can by parametrised by one real parameter. In the case of (i), we use the angle of rotation of the elliptic map, while in (ii) and (iii) we use \( \lambda \) and \( \mu \) respectively. In order to simplify notation we let \( t \) denote the parameter in each family and let \( f_t \) denote element in the family, where it is understood that \( t \in \mathbb{R} \) in family (i), \( t \geq 1 \) in (ii) and \( t \geq 0 \) in (iii).

**Lemma 3.23.** Suppose that \( g \) is a loxodromic Möbius transformation with \( 0 < \alpha_g < \beta_g < +\infty \). Then in each of the families (i), (ii) and (iii) there is an interval \( (a, b) \subset \mathbb{R} \) such that \( f_t g \) is elliptic for all \( t \in (a, b) \). Moreover the functions \( t \mapsto \text{fix}(f_t g) \) and \( t \mapsto \theta(f_t g) \) are continuous on \( (a, b) \), and the former is injective.

**Proof.** There is an algebraic proof of this lemma, but the geometric proof we offer is more illuminating. We consider cases (i), (ii) and (iii) in turn; first case (i). Let \( \gamma \) denote the reflection in the hyperbolic line \( \ell \) that passes through \( i \) and is orthogonal to
the axis of $g$. Then $g = \gamma \beta$, where $\beta$ is the reflection in another line $\ell_{\beta}$ that is parallel to $\ell_{\gamma}$. Let $\ell_{t}$ denote the line that passes through $i$ such that $f_{t} = \alpha_{t} \gamma$, where $\alpha_{t}$ is the reflection in $\ell_{t}$. For some value of $t$, $t = \tau$ say ($\tau = \pi$ suffices), $\ell_{\tau}$ intersects $\ell_{\beta}$ at a single point in $\mathbb{H}^{2}$. Moreover, $f_{\tau} g = \alpha_{\tau} \beta$ is elliptic, because $\ell_{\tau}$ and $\ell_{\beta}$ intersect at a point in $\mathbb{H}^{2}$. Since the map $t \mapsto f_{t}$ is continuous, the Möbius group is a topological group, and the set of elliptic transformations is an open subset of the Möbius group, it follows that there is some open interval $(a, b) \subset \mathbb{R}$ containing $\tau$ such that $f_{t} g$ is elliptic for all $t \in (a, b)$. Moreover, since the functions $h \mapsto f(h)$ and $h \mapsto \theta(h)$ are continuous, it follows that the maps $t \mapsto \text{fix}(f_{t} g)$ and $t \mapsto \theta(f_{t} g)$ are also continuous. Indeed, the continuity is geometrically clear since $\text{fix}(f_{t} g)$ is the point where $\ell_{\beta}$ and $\ell_{t}$ intersect and $\theta(f_{t} g)$ is twice the anticlockwise angle between $\ell_{\beta}$ and $\ell_{t}$. It is also clear from the geometry that both functions are injective, and we verify this for the function $t \mapsto \text{fix}(f_{t} g)$. Suppose, then, that a point $\zeta \in \mathbb{H}^{2}$ is the common fixed point of $f_{t} g$ and $f_{s} g$, for some $t, s \in (a, b)$. This means that $f_{t-s}$ fixes $g(\zeta)$. If $t \neq s$ then we must have $g(\zeta) = i$, which is not possible since $\zeta \in \ell_{\beta}$, $i \in \ell_{\tau}$ and $g(\ell_{\beta})$ does not meet $\ell_{\gamma}$. Hence $g(\zeta) \neq i$, and so $t = s$ after all.

Now for case (ii). This time let $\ell_{\gamma}$ be the line that is orthogonal to the axis of $g$ and to the vertical hyperbolic line $L$ between 0 and $\infty$ (the positive imaginary axis). In Euclidean terms, $\ell_{\gamma}$ is a Euclidean semicircle centred on the origin that is symmetric about $L$. Outside this semicircle is contained the hyperbolic line $\ell_{\beta}$ that is orthogonal to the axis of $g$ and satisfies $g = \gamma \beta$ (where $\beta$ and $\gamma$ are the reflections in $\ell_{\beta}$ and $\ell_{\gamma}$ respectively). Let $\alpha_{t}$ denote the reflection in the line $\ell_{t}$, chosen such that $\ell_{t}$ is orthogonal to $L$ and such that $f_{t} = \alpha_{t} \gamma$. Note that $f_{t}$, which belongs to family (ii), has attracting fixed point $\infty$ and repelling fixed point 0, and so for $t > 0$ the line $\ell_{t}$ is outside the semicircle bounded by the real axis and $\ell_{\gamma}$. Note that $\ell_{\beta}$ is not orthogonal to $L$, since $\ell_{\gamma}$ is the unique geodesic that is orthogonal to both $L$ and the axis of $g$. It follows that we can choose a value of $t$, $t = \tau$ say, such that $\ell_{t}$ meets $\ell_{\beta}$ at exactly one point in $\mathbb{H}^{2}$. Hence at $t = \tau$, the transformation $f_{t} g = \alpha_{t} \beta$ is elliptic and fixes the point in the hyperbolic plane where $\ell_{t}$ cuts $\ell_{\beta}$. As in the case of family (i), we can choose an open interval $(a, b) \subset \mathbb{R}^{+}$ containing $\tau$ such that $f_{t} g$ is an elliptic transformation for all $t \in (a, b)$. Again, since the functions
h ↦ fix(h) and h ↦ θ(h) are continuous, the functions t ↦ fix(f_t g) and t ↦ θ(f_t g) are also continuous on (a, b). The former function is injective, for if a < s ≤ t < b and f_s g and f_t g both fix the same point ζ ∈ ℍ^2, then f_s^{-1} f_t = f_{t-s} fixes g(ζ). If t ≠ s then f_{t-s} is loxodromic and so cannot fix any point in ℍ^2, hence we must have t = s, as required.

Case (iii) is similar to case (ii), and we omit the argument.

We now set about proving Theorem 3.2. We will need the following result of Bárány, Beardon and Carne [2, Theorem 3], mentioned in the introduction.

**Theorem 3.24.** Suppose that f and g are noncommuting elements of Aut(D), and one of them is an elliptic element of infinite order. Then ⟨f, g⟩ is dense in Aut(D).

We also need the following lemma, which states two separate results. The first follows from the characterisation of elementary groups given on page 84 of [3], while the second follows from [3, Theorem 8.4.1].

**Lemma 3.25.**

(i) If an elementary group contained in Aut(D) contains elliptic transformations, then they all fix a common point in D.

(ii) If a nonelementary subgroup of Aut(D) contains elliptic transformations whose fixed points accumulate in D, then the group contains an elliptic transformation of infinite order.

The next theorem is a stronger version of Theorem 3.2 (we will need this stronger statement later). Recall from the introduction that Möb(J) denotes the semigroup of those Möbius transformations that map a closed interval J within itself.

**Theorem 3.26.** Suppose that S is a semigroup that is not elementary, semidiscrete, or contained in Möb(J), for any nontrivial closed interval J ⊂ S^1. Then there is a two-generator semigroup within S that is dense in Aut(D).

**Proof.** We frame the proof using the upper half-plane model. By Lemma 3.22, we can assume, after conjugating S by a Möbius transformation in Aut(ℍ), that its closure
$\mathcal{S}$ contains one of the families of maps (i), (ii) or (iii). In order to apply Lemma 3.23, we will prove that there is a loxodromic map $g$ in $S$ with $0 < \alpha_g < \beta_g < +\infty$ (possibly after conjugating $S$ again). To this end, suppose first that $\mathcal{S}$ contains the family of type (i). The sets $\Lambda^-(S)$ and $\Lambda^+(S)$ are perfect, and, since $S$ is not elementary, by Theorem 3.21 we can choose a loxodromic map $g$ in $S$ such that $0 < \alpha_g < \beta_g < +\infty$.

Suppose now that $\mathcal{S}$ contains a family of type (ii); then $0 \in \Lambda^-(S)$ and $\infty \in \Lambda^+(S)$. One possibility might be that $\Lambda^-(S)$ is contained in a closed interval $J$, and $\Lambda^+(S)$ is contained in the closed interval $\mathbb{R} \setminus J$. In fact this cannot be: for then there exists a unique complementary connected component of $\Lambda^-$ whose interior meets $\Lambda^+$. Let us denote this component, regarded as a subset of $\mathbb{R}$, by $U$. Since $S$ is not elementary, $U$ has a non-empty interior and $U \neq \mathbb{R}$. Since elements of $S$ map complementary components of $\Lambda^-$ into complementary components of $\Lambda^+$, we see that $U$ is forward invariant under $S$, and so $S \subset \text{M"ob}(U)$ contrary to our assumption. It follows, then, that there exist points $p$ in $\Lambda^-(S)$ and $q$ in $\Lambda^+(S)$ with either $-\infty < p < q < 0$ or $0 < q < p < +\infty$. After conjugating $S$ by the map $z \mapsto -z$ (which fixes the family of type (ii)), we can assume that the points $p$ and $q$ satisfy $0 < q < p < +\infty$. We can now apply Theorem 3.21 to deduce the existence of a loxodromic map $g$ in $S$ with $0 < \alpha_g < \beta_g < +\infty$.

The remaining case is that $\mathcal{S}$ contains a family of type (iii). This can be dealt with in a similar way to the previous case, only this time if we have $-\infty < p < q < 0$ and not $0 < q < p < +\infty$, we must conjugate by a parabolic map of the form $z \mapsto z + t$ (for some $t \in \mathbb{R}$) that fixes the family (iii). Once again we deduce the existence of a loxodromic map $g$ with $0 < \alpha_g < \beta_g < +\infty$.

We are now in a position to apply Lemma 3.23 which asserts the existence of an interval $(a, b) \subset \mathbb{R}$ such that $f_t g$ is elliptic for all $t \in (a, b)$. Moreover there is a dense subset $A \subset (a, b)$ such that $f_t \in S$ for all $t \in A$. One possibility is there exists $t \in A$ such that $f_t g$ is an elliptic map of infinite order. In this case Theorem 3.24 tells us that $\langle f_t g, g \rangle$, and hence $S$, is dense in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{H}^2)$. Otherwise, the collection of functions $\mathcal{F} = \{f_t g \mid t \in A\}$ are elliptic elements of finite order within $S$. By Lemma 3.23 the fixed points of $\mathcal{F}$ accumulate.
in $\mathbb{H}^2$. Hence the group generated by $\mathcal{F}$ is contained in $S$, and by Lemma 3.25 (i) this group is not elementary. Hence by Lemma 3.25 (ii) the group generated by $\mathcal{F}$ contains an elliptic element of infinite order, $h$ say. Now Theorem 3.24 that tells us that $\langle h, g \rangle$ is dense in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{H}^2)$, and so $S$ is dense in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{H}^2)$, as required.

□

Our next objective is to obtain a version of Theorem 3.2 for finitely-generated semigroups, as promised at the beginning of this chapter. However, before we do that, we must take a detour to study some anomalous semigroups that are exceptional cases in the version of Theorem 3.2 for finitely-generated semigroups and in Theorem 3.3.

5. Classification of finitely-generated semigroups and proof of Theorem 3.3

We now take a closer look at exceptional semigroups, given on page 10 in the introduction. Recall that a semigroup $S$ of Möbius transformations is exceptional if it lies in $\text{Möb}(J)$ for some nontrivial closed interval $J$, and the collection of elements of $S$ that fixes $J$ as a set forms a nontrivial discrete group, and there is another element of $S$ outside this discrete group that fixes one of the end points of $J$. One of the reasons that exceptional semigroups are special is that, although finitely-generated semigroups contained in $\text{Möb}(J)$ are usually semidiscrete, exceptional semigroups are never semidiscrete.

Lemma 3.27. Exceptional semigroups are not semidiscrete.

Proof. By conjugating, we may assume that $J = [0, +\infty]$ and the group part of $S$ comprises maps of the form $g_n(z) = \lambda^n z$, $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, where $\lambda < 1$. Furthermore, we may assume that there is a map $f(z) = az + b$ in the inverse free part of $S$, where $a > 0$ and $b > 0$. Observe that, since $f \in S \setminus S^{-1}$, the maps

$$g_nfg_n^{-1}(z) = az + \lambda^n b$$

lie in $S \setminus S^{-1}$ for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Therefore the map $h(z) = az$ lies in the closure $\overline{S \setminus S^{-1}}$ of $S \setminus S^{-1}$ in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$. By composing $h$ with the maps $g_n$ we see that the identity belongs to $\overline{S \setminus S^{-1}}$, and so $S$ is not semidiscrete. □
In the remainder of this section we explain how it is straightforward to identity a finitely-generated exceptional semigroup by examining the generating set alone. We need the following lemma.

**Lemma 3.28.** Suppose that $S$ is a semigroup contained in $\text{Möb}(J)$, for some nontrivial closed interval $J$, that is generated by a set $F$. Then $S$ has an element that fixes exactly one of the end points of $J$ if and only if $F$ contains such an element.

**Proof.** If $F$ has an element that fixes exactly one of the end points of $J$, then certainly $S$ does too, as $F \subseteq S$. Conversely, suppose that no element of $F$ fixes exactly one of the end points of $J$. Suppose that an element $f$ of $S$ fixes one of the end points $a$ of $J$. We can choose maps $f_i$ in $F$ such that $f = f_1 \cdots f_n$. Observe that $f(J) \subseteq f_1(J)$, so $a \in f_1(J)$, which implies that $f_1(a) = a$. Therefore the element $f_2 \cdots f_n$ of $S$ fixes $a$, and, by our assumption, $f_1(J) = J$. Repeating this argument we see that $f_j(J) = J$ for $j = 1, \ldots, n$, so $f(J) = J$. We have now proved that no element of $S$ fixes exactly one end point of $J$, as required.

Suppose now that we have a semigroup $S$ generated by a finite set $F$, and we wish to know whether $S$ is exceptional. First look for a collection of two or more loxodromic transformations in $F$ with the same axis. Lemma 3.6 tells us precisely when this collection of loxodromic maps generates a discrete group. If there is no such collection, or more than one such collection, then $S$ is not exceptional. Let us suppose there is indeed one such collection, with axis $\gamma$, and this collection does generate a discrete group. In order for $S$ to be exceptional, every element of $F$ must lie in $\text{Möb}(J)$, where $J$ is one of the two intervals in $\mathbb{R}$ with the same end points as $\gamma$. If this is the case, then Lemma 3.28 tells us that $S$ is exceptional if and only if $F$ contains an element that fixes exactly one of the end points of $J$.

**5.1. A classification of finitely-generated semigroups.** Here we prove Corollary 3.30, which is a version of Theorem 3.2 for finitely-generated semigroups. Given a closed interval $J$, let us denote by $\text{Möb}_0(J)$ the group part of $\text{Möb}(J)$, which comprises those elements in $\text{Möb}(J)$ that fix $J$ as a set. It is the one-parameter family of loxodromic
Möbius transformations whose fixed points are the end points of $J$. If $J = [0, +\infty]$, then $\text{Möb}_0(J)$ consists of all maps of the form $z \mapsto \lambda z$, where $\lambda > 0$.

**Theorem 3.29.** Let $S$ be a finitely-generated semigroup that is contained in $\text{Möb}(J)$ for some nontrivial closed interval $J$. Then $S$ is semidiscrete if and only if it is nonexceptional and not dense in $\text{Möb}_0(J)$.

**Proof.** By Lemma 3.27, exceptional semigroups are not semidiscrete, and, obviously, nor are semigroups that are dense in $\text{Möb}_0(J)$. Suppose now that $S$ is neither exceptional nor dense in $\text{Möb}_0(J)$. By conjugation, we may assume that $J = [0, +\infty]$. Let us denote by $T$ the collection of maps in $S$ that fix $J$ as a set. Each element of $T$ has the form $z \mapsto \lambda z$, where $\lambda > 0$. We split the remaining argument into two cases depending on whether (i) $T$ is a nontrivial discrete group, or (ii) all elements $z \mapsto \lambda z$ of $T$ satisfy $\lambda \geq 1$, or else they all satisfy $\lambda \leq 1$. We also include in (ii) the possibility that $T = \emptyset$. Let $F$ be a finite generating set for $S$.

In case (i), as $S$ is not an exceptional semigroup, there is an interval $K = [a, b]$, where $0 < a < b < +\infty$, such that if $f \in F$ and $f$ does not fix $J$ as a set, then $f(J) \subseteq K$. Suppose now that $F_n$ is a sequence of distinct elements of $S$. We wish to show that $F_n$ cannot converge to the identity, because doing so will demonstrate that $S$ is semidiscrete. If $F_n \in T$ for infinitely many $n \in \mathbb{N}$, then certainly $F_n$ cannot converge to the identity because $T$ is discrete. Otherwise, when $n$ is sufficiently large, we can write $F_n = G_n f_n H_n$, where $G_n \in T$ (possibly $G_n = I$), $f_n \in F \setminus T$ and $H_n \in S$. Notice that $f_n H_n(J) \subseteq f_n(J) \subseteq K$.

Let $G_n(z) = \lambda_n z$, where $\lambda_n > 0$. Either $\lambda_n \geq 1$, in which case $F_n(0) \geq f_n H_n(0) \geq a$, or $\lambda_n \leq 1$, in which case $F_n(\infty) \leq f_n H_n(\infty) \leq b$. Therefore $F_n$ does not converge to the identity.

Let us move on to case (ii), and let us assume that every element of $T$ has the form $z \mapsto \lambda z$, where $\lambda \leq 1$ (the other case is similar). We include the possibility that $T = \emptyset$ in our analysis. Let $D$ denote the open top-right quadrant of the complex plane. This is the hyperbolic half-plane in $\mathbb{H}^2$ with boundary $J$. There exists a Euclidean line $\ell$ that
intersects \( \mathbb{R} \) at some point \( x < 0 \) and has a positive slope chosen such that it intersects \( D \) with the property that for any loxodromic element of \( \mathcal{F} \) that has \( \alpha_f = \infty \) and \( f(0) > 0 \), we have \( \beta_f < 0 \), and for any element \( f \in \mathcal{F} \setminus T \) that does not fix \( \infty \), the domain \( f(D) \) lies entirely below \( \ell \). This is possible since \( \mathcal{F} \) is finite. Let \( U \) denote the subset of \( D \) consisting of points below the line \( \ell \).

It is easy to check that each element in \( \mathcal{F} \setminus \{I\} \) maps \( U \) strictly inside itself. Since each \( f \in \mathcal{F} \cap T \) maps \( \ell \) to a parallel Euclidean line strictly below \( \ell \), we see each such \( f \) maps \( U \) strictly inside itself. If \( f \in \mathcal{F} \setminus T \) and \( f \) does not fix \( \infty \), then \( f \) maps \( D \) to a Euclidean semicircle bounded by a hyperbolic geodesic, both of whose landing points lie in \( [0, +\infty) \).

We choose the slope of \( \ell \) so that each such semicircle is contained in \( U \). If \( f \in \mathcal{F} \setminus T \) and \( f(\infty) = \infty \), then possibly \( f \) is parabolic, in which case \( f(z) = z + c \) for some \( c \in (0, +\infty) \), and so \( f \) maps \( U \) strictly inside itself. Otherwise \( f \) is loxodromic, and either it has attracting fixed point \( \infty \) and repelling fixed point in \( (-\infty, 0) \), in which case by choice of \( x \) it can be seen that \( f \) maps \( U \) strictly inside itself; or it has repelling fixed point \( \infty \) and attracting fixed point in \( (0, +\infty) \), and the same conclusion can be drawn in this case too.

Now for each \( f \in \mathcal{F} \setminus \{I\} \) we can choose a point \( z_f \in \mathbb{H}^2 \setminus U \) such that \( f(z_f) \in U \). Any element of \( S \setminus \{I\} \) maps at least one point of the finite set \( \{z_f \mid f \in \mathcal{F} \setminus \{I\}\} \) into \( U \). To see this, express the given element as a word in the generating set \( \mathcal{F} \setminus \{I\} \) and consider the action of the element on \( z_f \), where \( f \) is the rightmost term in this word. It follows that \( S \) is semidiscrete.

We can now state a version of Theorem 3.2 for finitely-generated semigroups, which follows immediately from Theorems 3.2 and 3.29.

**Corollary 3.30.** Let \( S \) be a finitely-generated semigroup. Then \( S \) is either

(i) elementary; or

(ii) semidiscrete; or

(iii) contained in \( \text{M"ob}(J) \), for some nontrivial closed interval \( J \), and is either exceptional or dense in \( \text{M"ob}_0(J) \); or

(iv) dense in \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{D}) \).
5.2. Proof of Theorem 3.3. Our next task is to prove Theorem 3.3. This theorem is the semigroups counterpart of a well-known result (see for example [3, Theorem 5.4.2]) in the theory of Fuchsian groups, which says that a nonelementary group of Möbius transformations is discrete if and only if every two-generator subgroup is discrete. Here is a version of that result for semigroups, which, unlike Theorem 3.3, does not assume that the semigroup is finitely-generated.

Theorem 3.31. Let $S$ be a nonelementary semigroup that is not contained in $\text{Möb}(J)$, for any nontrivial closed interval $J$. Then $S$ is semidiscrete if and only if every two-generator semigroup contained in $S$ is semidiscrete.

This theorem is an immediate corollary of Theorem 3.26. The assumption that $S$ is not contained in $\text{Möb}(J)$ cannot be removed. To see why this is so, consider, for example, the semigroup $S$ generated by the maps $(1 - 1/n)z$ for $n = 2, 3, \ldots$. Clearly $S$ is not semidiscrete, but every two-generator semigroup within $S$ is semidiscrete. This particular semigroup is elementary, but it is easy to adjust it to give a nonelementary example: simply append to $S$ any element of $\text{Möb}([0, +\infty])$ that fixes neither 0 nor $\infty$.

Let us now turn to Theorem 3.3 which states that any finitely-generated nonexceptional semigroup $S$ contained in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ is semidiscrete if and only if every two-generator semigroup contained in $S$ is semidiscrete.

Proof of Theorem 3.3. If $S$ is semidiscrete, then certainly any two-generator semigroup in $S$ is semidiscrete. Conversely, suppose that every two-generator semigroup contained in $S$ is semidiscrete. By Theorem 3.26, $S$ is either elementary, semidiscrete or contained in $\text{Möb}(J)$, for some closed interval $J$. If $S$ elementary and is not contained in the stabiliser group of $z$, for some $z \in \overline{\mathbb{C}}$, then one can check each case in Theorem 3.5 and verify that $S$ semidiscrete. If $S$ is contained in $\text{Möb}(J)$ and is not elementary or semidiscrete, then Corollary 3.30 tells us that $S$ is dense in $\text{Möb}_0(J)$. However, Lemma 3.6(iii) shows that this cannot be so; therefore $S$ cannot be contained in $\text{Möb}(J)$ but nonelementary or semidiscrete after all. We conclude that, in each case, $S$ is semidiscrete. □
6. Intersecting limit sets

In this section we prove Theorem \(3.3\), which says that if \(S\) is a nonelementary, finitely-generated and semidiscrete semigroup contained in \(\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})\), then \(\Lambda^+(S) = \Lambda^-(S)\) if and only if \(S\) is a group. The next lemma is an important step in establishing this result.

**Lemma 3.32.** Let \(S\) be a nonelementary semigroup contained in \(\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)\) that satisfies \(\Lambda^-(S) \subseteq \Lambda^+(S)\). Let \(f \in S\), \(p \in \Lambda^-(S)\), and let \(U\) be an open neighbourhood of \(p\). Then there exists an element \(g\) of \(S\) such that \(fg\) is loxodromic with attracting fixed point in \(U\).

**Proof.** By Theorem \(3.21\), we can choose a loxodromic element \(h_1\) of \(S\) such that \(\beta h_1 \in U\). Now observe that for any point \(\zeta\) in \(\mathbb{B}^3\), the sequence \((fh_1^n)^{-1}(\zeta)\) converges ideally to \(p\). By replacing \(h_1\) with a power of \(h_1\) if necessary, we can assume that \(fh_1\) is loxodromic, and using the observation that we just made we can assume that \(\beta fh_1 \in U\).

Let \(V\) be an open neighbourhood of \(\beta fh_1\) such that \(fh_1(V) \subseteq U\). Appealing to Theorem \(3.21\) again, we can choose a loxodromic element \(h_2\) of \(S\) such that \(\alpha h_2 \in V\). By replacing \(h_2\) by a power of \(h_2\) if necessary we can ensure that, first, \(h_2(U) \subseteq V\) and, second, \(fh_1 h_2\) is loxodromic. Since \(fh_1 h_2(U) \subseteq fh_1(V) \subseteq U\) we see that \(\alpha fh_1 h_2 \in U\). The lemma now follows on choosing \(g = h_1 h_2\).

The main theorem of this section follows.

**Theorem 3.33.** Let \(S\) be a finitely-generated, nonelementary semidiscrete subsemigroup of \(\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})\) that satisfies \(\Lambda^-(S) \subseteq \Lambda^+(S)\). Then \(S\) is a group.

**Proof.** Let \(g \in S\). Choose two distinct points \(u\) and \(v\) in \(\Lambda^-(S)\). By Lemma \(3.32\) it is possible to construct a composition sequence \(F_n = f_1 \cdots f_n\) generated by \(S\) that accumulates at both \(u\) and \(v\). To see this, observe that given \(F_n = f_1 \cdots f_n\) such that \(F_n(0)\) is within \(\epsilon\) (with respect to the chordal metric) of \(u\), we can, by Lemma \(3.32\) choose \(h \in S\) such that \(\alpha_{F_n h}\) is within \(\epsilon/2\) of \(v\). Then for all large enough \(k \in \mathbb{N}\), the point \((F_n h)^k(0)\) is within \(\epsilon\) of \(v\); hence we can choose \(f_{n+1} = h(F_n h)^{k-1}\) such that \(F_{n+1}(0)\) is within \(\epsilon\) of \(v\). Furthermore, we can easily fashion this composition sequence such that \(f_i = g\) for infinitely many positive integers \(i\). Notice that \(F_n\) is discrete, because \(S\) is semidiscrete,
If $F_n$ is an escaping sequence, then $S$ is a group, by Theorem 3.9. If the sequence $F_n$ is not an escaping sequence then because it is discrete, it has a constant subsequence $F_{n_1}, F_{n_2}, \ldots$. Choose $m > n_1$ such that $f_m = g$, and choose $k$ such that $n_k < m \leq n_{k+1}$. Then 

$$f_{n_k+1}f_{n_k+2}\cdots f_{n_{k+1}} = F_{n_k}^{-1}F_{n_{k+1}} = I.$$ 

Hence $g^{-1} \in S$. As we chose $g$ arbitrarily from $S$, we conclude that $S$ must be a group.

Theorem 3.4 given at the start of this chapter is an immediate consequence of this theorem. By referring to Section 1 of this chapter we see that the only finitely-generated semidiscrete semigroups that do not contain loxodromic elements are either finite groups of elliptic maps with a common fixed point, or semidiscrete semigroups of parabolic maps with a common fixed point. All these semigroups satisfy $\Lambda^- \subseteq \Lambda^+$, but some of the latter type are not groups, such as $\langle z \mapsto z + 1 \rangle$.

Theorem 3.33 only applies to subsemigroups of $\operatorname{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$; however, provided that we additionally suppose the forward limit set of $S$ is not connected, its proof can be adapted for subsemigroups of $\operatorname{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$. First we give a preparatory lemma.

**Lemma 3.34.** Suppose $F$ is a bounded collection of elements in $\operatorname{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$. If $F_n$ is an escaping composition sequence generated by $F$, then $\Lambda^+(F_n)$ is connected.

**Proof.** Suppose $F_n = f_1 \cdots f_n$ where $f_n$ belongs to $F$ for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Choose any $\epsilon > 0$. Since $F$ is bounded in $\operatorname{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$, for any $\zeta \in \mathbb{B}^3$ there is some positive real number $M$ such that $\rho(\zeta, f(\zeta)) \leq M$ for each $f \in F$. Hence $\rho(F_n(\zeta), F_{n+1}(\zeta)) = \rho(\zeta, f_{n+1}(\zeta)) \leq M$ for all $n$. Since $F_n(\zeta)$ accumulates only on the ideal boundary and $\rho(F_n(\zeta), F_{n+1}(\zeta)) \leq M$, we have $\chi(F_n(\zeta), F_{n+1}(\zeta)) < \epsilon$ for all large enough $n$. Now suppose towards contradiction that $\Lambda^+(F_n)$ is not connected. Then we can choose two open subsets of $\mathbb{S}^2$, $U$ and $V$, both of which meet $\Lambda^+(F_n)$, that are a positive distance apart, and are such that $\Lambda^+(F_n) \subseteq U \cup V$. It follows that for all large enough $n$ we have $\chi(F_n(\zeta), U \cup V) < \epsilon$. Hence can choose
Theorem 3.35. Let $S$ be a nonelementary, finitely-generated semidiscrete subsemigroup of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ that satisfies $\Lambda^-(S) \subseteq \Lambda^+(S)$. If $\Lambda^+(S)$ is not connected then $S$ is a group.

Proof. Suppose towards contradiction that $\Lambda^-$ is contained in one connected component of $\Lambda^+$, which we shall denote by $\Lambda^+_0$. Let $U \subseteq S^2$ be any open set that meets $\Lambda^+$. By Theorem 1.8(i) applied to $S$ we can choose a loxodromic transformation $g \in S$ with attracting fixed point in $U$. Since $\Lambda^-$ is contained in $\Lambda^+_0$, the repelling fixed point of $g$, namely $\beta_g$, must lie in $\Lambda^+_0$. Since each element of $S$ maps any component of $\Lambda^+$ within another component, it follows that $g$ must map $\Lambda^+_0$ within itself. Since $S$ is nonelementary, $\Lambda^+$ is a perfect set, so $\Lambda^+_0$ contains points other than $\beta_g$. Hence for all large enough $n$, the set $g^n(\Lambda^+_0)$ meets $U$. Since $U$ was arbitrary, $\Lambda^+_0$ must be the only component of $\Lambda^+$, contradicting our assumption that $\Lambda^+$ is not connected. It follows that we can assume $\Lambda^-$ is not contained within a single connected component of $\Lambda^+$.

Now just as in the proof of Theorem 3.33 for any pair of distinct points $u$ and $v$ in $\Lambda^-$, which we take to lie in different components of $\Lambda^+$, we can find a composition sequence $F_n = f_1 \cdots f_n$ that accumulates at both points. (Strictly speaking, Theorem 3.33 assumes $S \subseteq \text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$, but just the same argument works here.) Moreover, for any $g \in S$ we can choose $F_n$ such that $f_i = g$ for infinitely many $i \in \mathbb{N}$. If $F_n$ is an escaping sequence then by Lemma 3.34 $\Lambda^+(F_n)$ is connected, and so $\Lambda^+$ must have a connected component that contains $u$ and $v$, which contradicts the fact that $u$ and $v$ lie in different components of $\Lambda^+$. Hence $F_n$ cannot be an escaping sequence, and because $F_n$ is discrete it has a constant subsequence $F_{n_1}, F_{n_2}, \ldots$. Choose $m > n_1$ such that $f_m = g$, and choose $k$ such that $n_k < m \leq n_{k+1}$. Then

$$f_{n_k+1}f_{n_k+2} \cdots f_{n_k+1} = F_{n_k}^{-1}F_{n_{k+1}} = I.$$ 

Hence $g^{-1} \in S$. As we chose $g$ arbitrarily from $S$, we conclude that $S$ must be a group. □
We suspect the assumption that $\Lambda^+(S)$ is not a connected set in Theorem 3.35 can be replaced with the assumption that $\Lambda^+(S) \neq \mathbb{C}$. Whether or not this can be done is an open problem under investigation. Nevertheless, it can be shown that if there exists a nonelementary finitely-generated semidiscrete semigroup $S$ whose forward and backward limit sets are equal to the connected set $\Lambda \neq \mathbb{C}$, then $S$ is contained in a Kleinian group with limit set $\Lambda$. 
CHAPTER 4

Limit sets

1. Introduction

In this chapter we study the limit sets of a semigroup, their internal structure, and what limit sets can tell us about the semigroup that generates them. We have already utilised analogues of the conical and horospherical limit sets from the theory of Kleinian groups in Chapter 3. In Section 2 we introduce further noteworthy subsets of the limit sets and study their properties. In Section 3 we study semigroups whose limit sets are disjoint, and expand on recent work of Fried, Marotta and Stankewitz [15]. Finally, we consider how the limit sets of a semigroup behave under perturbation of its generators. Most of the results in this chapter relate to semigroups in any number of dimensions, but are not as strong as those obtained in Chapter 3 on semigroups acting on two dimensions.

We next give two lemmas from [15], which for completeness we record here.

Lemma 4.1. (Topological transitivity)
Let $S$ be a semigroup and suppose $U \subseteq S^2$ is any open set that meets $\Lambda^-$. Then $S(U)$ is either the whole ideal boundary, or the whole ideal boundary missing one point. In the latter case, the missing point is fixed by each element in $S$, and in particular $S$ is elementary.

Proof. First note that $S(U)$ is forward invariant with respect to $S$. By Theorem 1.8 (ii) we see that $S$ is not a normal family on $U$. Hence by Montel’s theorem, $S(U)$ misses at most two points on $\overline{C}$. First suppose towards contradiction that $S(U)$ misses exactly two points, say $w$ and $z$. Then since $S(U)$ is forward invariant, its complement, $\{w, z\}$, is backward invariant. This means that $\{w, z\}$ is a finite orbit of $S$, and in particular, $S$ is elementary. By consulting Proposition 1.7 and its proceeding discussion, we see that $S$ belongs either to case (c) or to case (f) given in the Proposition. By checking these
possibilities it can be seen that in fact $S(U)$ can miss at most one point, contrary to our assumption. Hence $S(U)$ misses at most one point in $S^2$, $z$ say. Then it follows that $S$ fixes $\{z\}$, as the complement of the forward invariant set $S(U)$.

**Lemma 4.2.** Suppose $S$ is a semigroup and $z$ is a point in $\Lambda^-$ that is not fixed by every element in $S$. Then $\Lambda^- = S^{-1}(z)$. Similarly if $z \in \Lambda^+$ is not fixed by every element in $S$, then $\Lambda^+ = S(z)$.

**Proof.** Pick any $\zeta \in \Lambda^-$, and let $U$ be any open neighbourhood of $\zeta$. Then by Theorem [4.1] we have $z \in g(U)$ for some $g \in S$, that is $g^{-1}(z) \in U$. Since $U$ was arbitrary, $\zeta$ is an accumulation point of $S^{-1}(z)$, and so $\Lambda^- \subseteq S^{-1}(z)$. Conversely, since $z \in \Lambda^-$ and $\Lambda^-$ is backward invariant, we see that $S^{-1}(z) \subseteq \Lambda^-$. Taking closures we obtain the reverse inclusion. Applying the same argument to $S^{-1}$ gives the second statement. □

As we are studying limit sets it is convenient to introduce notation to represent their complements. Accordingly, for a semigroup $S$ we define $\Omega^+(S) = S^2 \setminus \Lambda^+(S)$ and $\Omega^-(S) = S^2 \setminus \Lambda^-(S)$. As usual, if there is no danger of ambiguity we suppress mention of $S$.

2. On the structure of the limit sets

2.1. The sets $D^+$ and $D^-$. Here we introduce two important subsets of the limit sets of a semigroup. For any semigroup $S$ we define the sets

$$D^-(S) = \left\{ z \in \Lambda^-(S) \mid \Lambda^-(S) \subseteq S(z) \right\}$$

and

$$D^+(S) = \left\{ z \in \Lambda^+(S) \mid \Lambda^+(S) \subseteq S^{-1}(z) \right\}.$$

As usual we shall simply write $D^+$ or $D^-$ if the semigroup is clear from the context. We first note that $D^+$ is a forward invariant set and $D^-$ is backward invariant. When $S$ is a nonelementary group, the sets $D^+$ or $D^-$ are both equal to $\Lambda^+ = \Lambda^-$, and so any utility of these sets can be realised only when $S$ is not a group – there is no useful analogue of $D^+$ or $D^-$ in the theory of Kleinian groups.

By Lemma 4.2 for any $z \in \Lambda^+$, the closure of the orbit of $S(z)$ is equal to $\Lambda^+$. If moreover $z$ lies in $D^+$, then the closure of the orbit of $S^{-1}(z)$ covers $\Lambda^-$. Recall that if $f$ is a rational
function acting on $\mathbb{C}$ then the Julia set $J(f)$ is defined as the set of non-normality of the family $\{f^n \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$. The following result (sometimes called topological transitivity) is well known: for any rational function $f$ the set of points $z \in J(f)$ for which the orbit of $z$ is dense in $J(f)$, is itself dense in $J(f)$. The following theorem is motivated by the proof of that result, as given in [32, Corollary 4.16].

**Theorem 4.3.** Suppose $S$ is a semigroup such that no point in $\Lambda^-$ is fixed by every element in $S$. Then $D^-$ is a dense $G_\delta$ subset of $\Lambda^-$ with respect to the subspace topology on $\Lambda^-$. 

**Proof.** Working in the chordal metric, let $\{U_{j,k} \mid k = 1, \ldots, n(j)\}$ be an open cover of $\Lambda^-$, where $U_{j,k}$ has chordal diameter less than $1/j$ and $U_{j,k}$ meets $\Lambda^-$ for each $j \in \mathbb{N}$ and each $k = 1, \ldots, n(j)$. Let $V_{j,k} = S^{-1}(U_{j,k})$ for each $j \in \mathbb{N}$ and $k = 1, \ldots, n(j)$. Since $U_{j,k}$ meets $\Lambda^-$ and (by Lemma 4.2) $\Lambda^- = S^{-1}(z)$ for all $z \in \Lambda^-$, we can pick $z \in U_{j,k} \cap \Lambda^-$ so that $S^{-1}(z) \subseteq S^{-1}(U_{j,k})$ it follows that $\overline{S^{-1}(z)} \subseteq \overline{S^{-1}(U_{j,k}) \cap \Lambda^-}$, and since $S^{-1}(z)$ is a dense subset of $\Lambda^-$ we have $\Lambda^- \subseteq \overline{S^{-1}(U_{j,k}) \cap \Lambda^-}$. Hence $V_{j,k} \cap \Lambda^-$ is dense in $\Lambda^-$ for each $j \in \mathbb{N}$ and $k = 1, \ldots, n(j)$. As a complete metric space, $\Lambda^-$ is a Baire space, that is, any countable intersection of open dense subsets of $\Lambda^-$ is dense in $\Lambda^-$. It follows that $D = \bigcap_{j \in \mathbb{N}} \bigcap_{k \leq n(j)} (V_{j,k} \cap \Lambda^-) = \Lambda^- \cap \bigcap_{j \in \mathbb{N}} \bigcap_{k \leq n(j)} V_{j,k}$ is dense in $\Lambda^-$. Now if $z \in D$ then for all $j \in \mathbb{N}$ and $k \in \{1, \ldots, n(j)\}$ there is some $g \in S$ such that $g(z) \in U_{j,k}$. Hence $S(z)$ has points arbitrarily close to any point in $\Lambda^-$, and so $\overline{S(z)}$ covers $\Lambda^-$. This proves that $D$ is a dense $G_\delta$ set with respect to the subspace topology on $\Lambda^-$, and that $D \subseteq D^-$. 
By unpacking the definition, we verify that $D^- \subseteq D$: For suppose $z \in D^-$; since each open set $U_{j,k}$ meets $\Lambda^-$ and $S(z)$ is dense in $\Lambda^-$, $S(z)$ meets each $U_{j,k}$. In other words there exists some $g \in S$ such that $z \in g^{-1}(U_{j,k})$, so that $z \in S^{-1}(U_{j,k})$. Since this holds for each $U_{j,k}$ and $z$ lies $\Lambda^-$, it follows that $z$ lies in $D^-$ by definition. \hfill \Box

**Corollary 4.4.** The set $D^-$ meets $\Lambda^+$ if and only if $\Lambda^- \subseteq \Lambda^+$.

**Proof.** Clearly if $\Lambda^- \subseteq \Lambda^+$ then $D^-$ meets $\Lambda^+$. Conversely suppose $z$ lies in $D^- \cap \Lambda^+$; then we have $\Lambda^- \subseteq S(z) = \Lambda^+$, as required. \hfill \Box

Recall that a subset of a topological space is meagre if it is the countable union of nowhere dense sets. A residual set is the complement of a meagre set. Meagre sets can be regarded as topologically small sets – the family of meagre sets form a $\sigma$-ideal, that is the family contains all subsets and all countable unions of its elements. In a complete metric space such as $\Lambda^-$, a set is residual if and only if it contains a dense $G_\delta$ set. This means we can think of $D^-$ as a topologically large set, at least with respect to the subspace topology on $\Lambda^-$. It follows from Theorem 4.3 and Corollary 4.4 that unless $\Lambda^-$ is contained in $\Lambda^+$, then $\Lambda^+ \cap \Lambda^-$ is a meagre subset of $\Lambda^-$. Similarly, unless $\Lambda^+$ is contained in $\Lambda^-$, then $\Lambda^- \cap \Lambda^+$ is a meagre subset of $\Lambda^+$. Recall that in dimension two, by Theorem 3.33 if $S$ is finitely-generated, nonelementary, semidiscrete and either limit set is contained in the other, then $S$ is a group. Hence we can restate Theorem 3.33 as follows: a finitely-generated, nonelementary and semidiscrete subsemigroup of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ is a group if and only if $D^+$ meets $D^-$, in which case $D^+ = D^-$. 

Figure 4.1 shows the limit sets of the semigroup $S$ generated by the maps $f(z) = \frac{a}{1+z}$, $g(z) = \frac{a - 1 + 2ia^{1/2}}{1 + z}$ and $h(z) = \frac{-0.25}{1 + z}$, where $a = -0.1 + 0.7i$. These maps are chosen such that $f$, $gh$ and $hg$ are parabolic elements. The forward limit set is shown in red, while the backward limit set is shown in blue. The intersection $\Lambda^+(S) \cap \Lambda^-(S)$ is the set of fixed points of $f$, $gh$ and $hg$, which is certainly a meagre subset of both $\Lambda^+(S)$ and $\Lambda^-(S)$.
The next theorem shows that if $\Lambda^- \not\subseteq \Lambda^+$, then $D^- \subseteq \Lambda^-$. We know that if $\Lambda^- \not\subseteq \Lambda^+$ then $D^-$ does not meet $\Lambda^+$; however there are many such semigroups for which $\Lambda^- \subseteq \Lambda^+$. For example, take a Schottky subgroup $G$ of Aut($\mathbb{D}$) and choose two disjoint closed discs $I^-$ and $I^+$ that are orthogonal to the unit disc and that do not meet the Dirichlet region of $G$ centred at 0. Choose an element $f$ in Aut($\mathbb{D}$) that maps the interior of the complement of $I^+$ onto $I^-$. The semigroup $S$ generated by $G \cup \{f\}$ is semidiscrete, and has group part $G$ strictly contained in $S$. As Schottky groups are convex-cocompact, that is the (hyperbolic) convex hull of the limit set intersected with any Dirichlet region is a bounded set with respect to the hyperbolic metric, the conical limit set of $G$ is the limit set of $G$. Hence $\Lambda^-(S)$ meets $\Lambda^+(S)$ on at least the limit set of $G$, however $\Lambda^-(S) \not\subseteq \Lambda^+(S)$.

**Theorem 4.5.** Suppose $S$ is a semigroup such that $\Lambda^- \not\subseteq \Lambda^+$; then $D^- \subseteq \Lambda^-$. 
Proof. It follows from Corollary 4.4 that $D^- \cap \Lambda^+ = \emptyset$. Now choose $z \in D^-$, so by definition of $D^-$ there exists a sequence $g_n \in S$ such that $g_n(z)$ converges to $z$. It follows that $z \in \Lambda_c^-(g_n)$ for otherwise $g_n(z)$ must accumulate exactly where $g_n(\zeta)$ accumulates for any point $\zeta$ in hyperbolic space. This set of accumulation points is contained in $\Lambda^+$, and so cannot include $z$ as $D^-$ is disjoint from $\Lambda^+$. Hence $z$ is a backwards conical limit point of the sequence $g_n$, and so lies in the backward conical limit set of $S$. □

It follows from the theorem above that provided $\Lambda^- \not\subseteq \Lambda^+$, then $\Lambda^- \setminus \Lambda_c^-$ is a meagre subset of $\Lambda^-$. Notice that this holds whether or not $S$ is discrete or semidiscrete, and echoes the situation for a geometrically finite discrete group $G$, for which $\Lambda(G) \setminus \Lambda_c(G)$ is a countable set.

The semigroup of Theorem 3.11 is an example of a semigroup for which $D^+$ is not equal to $\Lambda_c^+$, as we now explain. Consider (see Figure 4.2 below) the semigroup $S = \langle g, h \rangle$ where $g, h$ are loxodromic maps such that $\alpha_g = \beta_h$ but $\beta_g$ and $\alpha_h$ are distinct points.

![Figure 4.2. The axes of g and h](image)

Then the closed interval contained in the unit circle that is separated from the axis of $h$ by the axis of $g$ is equal to the backward conical limit set. Similarly the closed interval contained in the unit circle that is separated from the axis of $g$ by the axis of $h$ is equal to the forward conical limit set. Hence the point $\alpha_g = \beta_h$ lies in both conical limit sets, and $\Lambda^+$ is the proper closed interval $[\beta_h, \alpha_h]$. As $S$ fixes $\alpha_g = \beta_h$, this point cannot lie in either $D^+$ or $D^-$, because the $S^{-1}$ orbit of $\alpha_g = \beta_h$ cannot accumulate everywhere in $\Lambda^+$. 


Similarly $\alpha_h \notin D^+$ because $\alpha_h \in \overline{\Omega}^+$ and $\overline{\Omega}^+$ is a backward invariant set, so that $S^{-1}(\alpha_h)$ cannot accumulate in the interior of $\Lambda^+$.

Before introducing the next interesting subset of $\Lambda^+$, we give an explicit description of $D^+(S)$ when $S$ is the Cantor semigroup, that is $S = \langle f_0, f_2 \rangle$ where $f_i(z) = \frac{1}{3}(z + i)$ for $i = 0, 2$. We shall shortly (in subsection 2.3) show that $D^+(S)$ is the set of points in $\Lambda^+(S)$ whose base-3 expansion contains every finite string in $\{0, 2\}$. Since the limit sets of $S$ are disjoint the forward conical limit is the full limit set, and so $D^+(S)$ is strictly contained in $\Lambda^+ \cap (S^-1)$ in this case.

2.2. The point transitive limit set and an inclusion theorem. The forward point transitive limit set of $S$, which we shall denote by $\Lambda^+_p(S)$, is the set of points $z$ on the ideal boundary with the following property. For any $\zeta$ in hyperbolic space and half-line $\gamma$ landing at $z$, there exists an escaping sequence $g_n \in S$ such that $\rho(g_n(\zeta), \gamma) \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$. It is easy to see that $\Lambda^+_p(S)$ is forward invariant, and so for nonelementary semigroups $\Lambda^+_p(S)$ is either empty or dense in $\Lambda^+$. The backward point transitive limit set, denoted by $\Lambda^-_p(S)$, is defined as $\Lambda^+_p(S^{-1})$. We remark that $\Lambda^+_p$, and indeed $\Lambda^+_c$, are $G_{\delta\sigma}$ sets, as can be seen from the set-theoretic descriptions of $\Lambda^+_p$ and $\Lambda^+_c$ given, for example, in Nicholls [34, Theorem 2.4.3]. The point transitive limit sets of Kleinian groups are utilised in number theory, see for example Lehner [25, Chapter 10]. Here we make little use of them; however they have a pleasing geometric definition and we can relate them to the other sets introduced thus far.

**Theorem 4.6.** Suppose $S$ is a semigroup such that $\Omega^-$ is not empty; then $\Lambda^+_p \subseteq D^+$.

**Proof.** Suppose $z \in \Lambda^+_p$ so that for all $\zeta \in B^3$ there exists an escaping sequence $g_n$ in $S$ such that

$$\rho(g_n(\zeta), \gamma) \to 0 \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty,$$

where $\gamma$ is the geodesic half-ray starting at 0 and landing at $z$. It follows that

$$\rho(\zeta, g_n^{-1}(\gamma)) \to 0 \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty.$$

Now for any point $w \in \Omega^-$ we can choose $\zeta$ to be an arbitrarily small Euclidean distance away from $w$ compared to the distance from $w$ to $\Lambda^-$. It follows from the geometry that
there is some $K > 0$ (depending on the distance from $w$ to $\Lambda^-$) such that one of the end points of $g_n^{-1}(\gamma)$ accumulates at most a distance $K(1 - |\zeta|)$ away from $w$. By choosing $\zeta$ close enough to $w$, any point on the boundary within $K(1 - |\zeta|)$ of $w$ lies inside $\Omega^-$, and so it must be $g_n^{-1}(z)$ (and not $g_n^{-1}(\zeta)$) that accumulates within $K(1 - |\zeta|)$ of $w$. Since we can choose $1 - |\zeta|$ to be arbitrary small, it follows that $S^{-1}(z)$ accumulates at $w$ itself. As $w$ was arbitrary we have $\Omega^- \subseteq S^{-1}(z)$, and so $\Omega^- \subseteq S^{-1}(z)$. Since $\Lambda^+$ is contained in $\Omega^-$ the result follows.

For any $z \in D^+$, the closure of $S^{-1}(z)$ covers $\Lambda^+$. The proof above shows that for $z \in \Lambda^+_{p}$, the closure of $S^{-1}(z)$ covers $\overline{\Omega^-}$.

Let $\mu$ be the Lebesgue measure on $S^2$, normalised so that $\mu(S^2) = 1$. For Kleinian groups, the Lebesgue measure of the conical and point transitive limit sets are equal [34 Theorem 2.4.3]. For semigroups, provided $\Lambda^+ \not\subseteq \Lambda^-$, the sets $D^+$ and $\Lambda^+_{p}$ either have the same measure as $\Lambda^+_c$, or have measure zero. In fact this is true of any forward invariant subset of $\Lambda^+_c$. At its heart, the proof given in [34 Theorem 2.4.3] uses the Lebesgue density theorem, which can be found in [13 Equation 2.20], and we record here.

**Theorem 4.7.** Lebesgue density theorem For $x \in S^2$ let $B(x, r)$ be the open chordal ball of radius $r$ centred at $x$, and let $\mu$ be the Lebesgue measure on $S^2$. If $E$ is a measurable subset of $S^2$, then for $\mu$-almost all $x \in E$ we have

$$\lim_{r \to 0} \frac{\mu(B(x, r) \cap E)}{\mu(B(x, r))} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x \in E \\ 0 & \text{if } x \not\in E. \end{cases}$$

Our analogous result uses hyperbolic harmonic measure, a tool familiar to Kleinian group theorists. The hyperbolic harmonic measure of a measurable set $X \subseteq S^2$ is the function

$$\omega_X : \mathbb{H}^3 \to \mathbb{R}$$

defined by

$$\omega_X(z) = \int_X \left( \frac{1 - |z|^2}{|z - \zeta|^2} \right)^2 d\mu(\zeta).$$

See [34 Chapter 5] for more on hyperbolic harmonic measure.
Lemma 4.8. Let $S$ be a semigroup and let $X$ be any measurable forward invariant subset of $S^2$. If $\mu(\Lambda^- \cap X) > 0$ then $\mu(X) = 1$.

Proof. For $z \in \mathbb{B}^3$ let $\omega_X(z)$ denote the hyperbolic harmonic measure of $X$ on $S^2$. Then for any $g \in S$ we have

$$\omega_X(0) \geq \omega_{g(X)}(0) = \omega_X(g^{-1}(0)).$$

The inequality follows from $g(X) \subseteq X$ and the definition of $\omega_X$, while the equality follows from the invariance property $\omega_{g(X)}(z) = \omega_X(g^{-1}(z))$ for all $g \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$, given in [34, Equation 5.1.3]. The conical limit of $\omega_X(z)$ at a point $w$ on the ideal boundary, is the limit, if it exists, of $\omega_X(z)$ as $z$ converges to $w$ from a bounded hyperbolic distance of some geodesic landing at $w$. Fatou’s theorem [34, Theorem 5.1.5] tells us that the conical limit of $\omega_X(z)$ exists and agrees with the characteristic function of $X$ at $\mu$-almost every point on $S^2$. Since $\mu(\Lambda^- \cap X) > 0$ there exists some $w \in \Lambda^- \cap X$ such that $\omega_X(z)$ has limit $1$ as $z$ converges to $w$ conically. Let us choose some sequence $g_n \in S$ such that $g_n^{-1}(0) \to w$ conically. The above inequality gives

$$\omega_X(0) \geq \omega_X(g_n^{-1}(0)) \to 1 \text{ as } n \to \infty.$$ 

But from the definition of hyperbolic harmonic measure, $\omega_X(0) = \mu(X)$. Hence $\mu(X) = 1$. \qed

Corollary 4.9. If $S$ is a nonelementary semigroup such that $\Lambda^+ \not\subseteq \Lambda^-$, then

$$\Lambda^+_p \subseteq D^+ \subseteq \Lambda^+_c.$$ 

Moreover, either $\mu(\Lambda^+_p) = \mu(\Lambda^+_c)$ or $\mu(\Lambda^+_p) = 0$. Similarly for $D^+$, either $\mu(D^+) = \mu(\Lambda^+_c)$ or $\mu(D^+) = 0$.

Proof. The inclusions follows from Theorems 4.5 and 4.6 noting that $\Lambda^+ \not\subseteq \Lambda^-$ implies $\Omega^-$ must be nonempty. As we remarked in the introduction to this subsection, both $\Lambda^+_p$ and $\Lambda^+_c$ are $G_\delta$ sets and so are certainly measurable, while that $D^+$ is measurable can be seen from its definition. Now suppose $\Lambda^+_c$ and $\Lambda^+_p$ do not have the same measure, that is $\mu(\Lambda^+_c \cap X) > 0$ where $X$ is the backward invariant set $\mathbb{B}^3 \setminus \Lambda^+_c$. Now by Lemma 4.8.
(applied to $S^{-1}$) it follows that $\mu(X) = 1$, and so $\mu(\Lambda_p^+) = 0$. The argument for $D^+$ is identical.

We remark that in the case where $S$ is discrete, the argument given in the proof of [34, Theorem 2.4.3] can be directly applied to $S$, and we can infer that the sets $\Lambda_p^+$ and $\Lambda_c^+$ have the same Lebesgue measure.

2.3. The buried points of the limit sets. For a semigroup $S$ we define $B^+(S)$ to be the set of buried (sometimes called inaccessible) points in $\Lambda^+(S)$, that is the set of points in $\Lambda^+(S)$ that do not lie on the boundary of any connected component of $\Omega^+(S)$. As usual we abbreviate $B^+(S)$ to $B^+$ whenever the semigroup in question is clear. Because of the topological nature of this definition, the ambient space upon which $S$ is taken to act is important. For example if $S$ is the Cantor semigroup whose forward limit set is the middle-thirds Cantor set, then, regarded as a subset of the real line, only the countably many end points of the deleted intervals are not buried point of the limit set. However as a subset of the complex plane, no limit point is buried. Because of the difficulties in studying higher dimensions, we limit our study of buried points to semigroups acting on 2-dimensional hyperbolic space.

Lemma 4.10. If $S$ is a nonelementary semigroup acting on $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$, then $B^+$ is a forward invariant, dense $G_\delta$ subset of $\Lambda^+$.

Proof. Let $\mathcal{C}$ denote the set of components of $\Omega^+$, so that

$$\Lambda^+ = \mathbb{S}^2 \setminus \bigcup_{C \in \mathcal{C}} C$$

and

$$B^+ = \mathbb{S}^2 \setminus \bigcup_{C \in \mathcal{C}} \overline{C} = \bigcap_{C \in \mathcal{C}} \mathbb{S}^2 \setminus \overline{C} = \bigcap_{C \in \mathcal{C}} \Lambda^+ \setminus \overline{C}.$$ 

Hence $B^+$ is a $G_\delta$ subset of $\Lambda^+$. Each $C$ is an open interval, the closure of which meets the perfect set $\Lambda^+$ only at its end points, and so $\Lambda^+ \setminus \overline{C}$ is an open, dense subset of $\Lambda^+$. As $\Lambda^+$ is a Baire space it follows from the Baire category theorem that $B^+$ is a dense subset of $\Lambda^+$. It remains to show that $B^+$ is forward invariant. Given any $z \in B^+$ and $g \in S$, suppose towards contradiction that $g(z)$ is not a buried point. Then $g(z) \in \partial C$ for some
$C \in \mathcal{C}$, and so $z \in g^{-1}(\partial C)$. Since $\Omega^+$ is backward invariant, $g^{-1}$ maps each connected component inside another, so that $g^{-1}(\partial C) \subseteq \overline{C_1}$ for some $C_1 \in \mathcal{C}$. Since $z$ lies in the complement of $\Omega^+$ we must have $z \in \partial C_1$, contradicting that $z$ is a buried point. This contradiction shows that $g(z)$ must be a buried point after all. □

Recall that $D^+$ is also a forward invariant, dense $G_\delta$ subset of $\Lambda^+$ and so $B^+$ has some of the same dynamical and topological properties as $D^+$. In two dimensions, one is contained in the other.

**Proposition 4.11.** If $S$ is a nonelementary subsemigroup of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ and $\Lambda^+ \not\subseteq \Lambda^-$, then $D^+ \subseteq B^+$.

**Proof.** We first consider the case where $\Lambda^+$ has empty interior, so that $\Lambda^+$ is a Cantor set. We can write the set of connected components of $\Omega^+$ as

$$\{(p_i, q_i) \mid i \in I\}$$

where $I$ is some countable index set and $(p_i, q_i) \subseteq \mathbb{S}^1$ is the open interval contained in the unit circle traversed by moving in an anticlockwise direction from $p_i$ to $q_i$. We write $P = \{p_i \mid i \in I\}$ and $Q = \{q_i \mid i \in I\}$, so that $\Lambda^+ \setminus B^+ = P \cup Q$. Notice that since $\Lambda^+$ has no isolated points, $P$ and $Q$ are disjoint. Suppose there exists some $z$ that lies in both $\Lambda^+ \setminus B^+$ and $D^+$. Further suppose $z \in P$ and write $z = p_j$; we shall show that $\Lambda^-$ covers $Q$. Since $z \in D^+$, $S^{-1}(z)$ accumulates at every point in $\Lambda^+$ and in particular at every point in $Q$. This means that for any $q \in Q$ there exists a sequence $g_n \in S$ such that

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} g_n^{-1}(p_j) = q.$$ 

Recall that $g^{-1}$ is an orientation-preserving self-map of $\mathbb{S}^1$ that maps components of $\Omega^+$ within components of $\Omega^+$. Hence there is some sequence $k(n)$ in $I$ such that

$$g_n^{-1}(p_j, q_j) \subseteq (p_{k(n)}, q_{k(n)}).$$

One possibility is that there exists some subsequence of $k(n)$ whose elements are distinct. In this case we can assume without loss of generality that each $k(n)$ is distinct. Hence the diameters of $(p_{k(n)}, q_{k(n)})$ tend to zero as $n$ tends to infinity, and since $g_n^{-1}(p_j)$ converges
to $q$, so does $g_n^{-1}(\zeta)$ for every $\zeta \in (p_j, q_j)$. Hence $g_n^{-1}$ converges ideally to $q$, and so $q \in \Lambda^-$. 

Otherwise there is some constant subsequence of $k(n)$, and in this case, without loss of generality, we can assume the sequence itself is constant. Hence 
\[ g_n^{-1}(p_j, q_j) \subseteq (p_k, q_k) \]
for some $k \in I$ and all $n$. Since $g_n^{-1}(p_j)$ converges to a point in $Q$ and $P \cap Q = \emptyset$, we must have $q = q_k$. Again using that $g_n^{-1}$ preserves orientation, $g_n^{-1}(\zeta)$ converges to $q_k$ for every point $\zeta$ in $(p_j, q_j)$. This means that $g_n^{-1}$ converges ideally to $q_k$, and so $q = q_k \in \Lambda^-$. By symmetry of argument if $z$ lies in $Q$ and $D^+$, then $\Lambda^-$ covers $P$. Hence the existence of any point $z$ in both $\Lambda^+ \setminus B^+$ and $D^+$ implies that $\Lambda^-$ covers at least one of the sets $P$ or $Q$.

We claim that both $P$ and $Q$ are dense in $\Lambda^+$. Then if $\Lambda^+ \setminus B^+$ and $D^+$ meet, then $P \subseteq \Lambda^-$ or $Q \subseteq \Lambda^-$; and so by taking closures we obtain $\Lambda^+ \subseteq \Lambda^-$, contrary to hypothesis. It follows from this contradiction that no such $z$ exists and so $\Lambda^+ \setminus B^+ \subseteq \Lambda^+ \setminus D^+$, that is, $D^+ \subseteq B^+$ as required.

It now suffices to prove the claim. Each point in $P$ is the limit of points in $Q$, that is $P \subseteq \overline{Q}$, and so $\overline{P} \subseteq \overline{Q}$. Similarly $\overline{Q} \subseteq \overline{P}$ and so $\overline{Q} = \overline{P}$, and it follows that 
\[ \Lambda^+ = \overline{P} \cup \overline{Q} = \overline{P \cup Q} = \overline{P} = \overline{Q}. \]
This completes the proof of the claim and proves the result in the case where $\Lambda^+$ has empty interior.

Now suppose $\Lambda^+$ has nonempty interior. If $\Lambda^+$ is equal to $S^1$, then $B^+$ is also equal to $S^1$; hence $D^+ \subseteq B^+$. Otherwise we can choose a point $z$ in $\Lambda^+ \setminus B^+$. In this case $\overline{\Omega^+}$ is a backward invariant set that does not cover $\Lambda^+$. Since $z$ lies in $\Lambda^+$ it lies in the closure of $\Omega^+$, but by the definition of $B^+$ it cannot lie in the interior of $\Omega^+$, and so $z \in \partial \Omega^+$. Since $\overline{\Omega^+}$ is backward invariant it follows that $S^{-1}(z)$ does not meet the complement of $\overline{\Omega^+}$, that is, the interior of $\Lambda^+$. Hence $z$ cannot lie in $D^+$, which shows that $\Lambda^+ \setminus B^+ \subseteq \Lambda^+ \setminus D^+$; in other words $D^+ \subseteq B^+$, as required. \qed
Notice that in the case where $\Lambda^+$ has nonempty interior, we did not use the fact that $S \subseteq \text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$. This means that in all dimensions $D^+ \subseteq B^+$ whenever $\Lambda^+$ has a nonempty interior.

We ask whether or not the reverse inclusion of Proposition 4.11 holds, that is, do we have $B^+ \subseteq D^+$ under suitable hypotheses? The answer to this question is no, as can be seen by describing $D^+$ and $B^+$ explicitly in the case of a very well behaved and tractable semigroup, the Cantor semigroup, which we recall is generated by the maps $f_i(z) = \frac{1}{3}(z + i)$ for $i = 0, 2$. We remark that although the Cantor semigroup is an elementary semigroup, the following descriptions of $D^+$ and $B^+$ can be seen to generalise; for example to sub-semigroups of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ that have disjoint limit sets and are generated by a finite set $\mathcal{F}$, with the property that $f(\Lambda^+) \cap g(\Lambda^+) = \emptyset$ for all distinct $f, g \in \mathcal{F}$. This means that the reverse inclusion of Proposition 4.11 fails for a large class of finitely-generated nonelementary semigroups.

Let $S = \langle f_0, f_2 \rangle$, the Cantor semigroup. Each point $z$ in $\Lambda^+$ has a unique base–3 expansion $z = 0.i_1i_2\ldots i_n\ldots$ where each $i_n$ lies in $\{0, 2\}$. We consider words, both infinite and finite, whose letters lie in $\{0, 2\}$. It is clear that $B^+$ is the set of those points $z = 0.i_1i_2\ldots i_n\ldots$ in $\Lambda^+$ such that $i_n$ is not eventually equal to 0 or eventually equal to 2. Since the forward and backward limit sets of $S$ are disjoint we have $\Lambda^+_c = \Lambda^+$. On the other hand, $D^+$ is the set of points in $\Lambda^+$ whose base–3 expansion contains every finite string in the letters $\{0, 2\}$ as a sub-string.

To see this, first suppose $i_1i_2\ldots i_n\ldots$ is an infinite word in $\{0, 2\}$ with this property. Then for any finite word $w$ there are natural numbers $m < n$ such that $w = i_m\ldots i_n$. Hence $f_{i_1}^{-1}\cdots f_{i_m}^{-1}(z)$ is a point in $\Lambda^+$ whose base–3 expansion begins with $w$. Since $w$ was arbitrary, $S^{-1}(z)$ accumulates at every point in $\Lambda^+$, and so $z \in D^+$ by definition.

Conversely suppose $z \in \Lambda^+$ has base–3 expansion $0.i_1i_2\ldots i_n\ldots$. Suppose that some finite word, $w = w_1\ldots w_m$ say, does not feature anywhere in the infinite word $i_1i_2\ldots i_n\ldots$. We claim that $S^{-1}(z)$ does not meet $f_{w_1}\cdots f_{w_m}([0, 1])$. The claim follows since for any infinite
word $j_1j_2\ldots j_n\ldots$ and any $p \in \mathbb{N}$ we have

$$0.j_1j_2\ldots j_n\ldots \in f_{j_1}\cdots f_{j_p}([0,1]),$$

and that $f_{j_1}^{-1}\cdots f_{j_p}^{-1}(0.i_1i_2\ldots i_n\ldots) \in (0,1)$ if and only if $j_q = i_q$ for every $q = 1,2,\ldots,p$.

Hence by the claim, $S^{-1}(z)$ avoids the interior of $f_{w_1}\cdots f_{w_m}([0,1])$ and so is not dense in $\Lambda^+$. This implies that $z$ cannot lie in $D^+$.

It is interesting to consider how the set of attracting fixed points fits in this picture. It turns out that every attracting fixed point of $S$, except those of the generators $f_0$ and $f_2$, lies in $B^+$, but no attracting fixed points lie in $D^+$. Indeed, if $i \in \{0,2\}^n$ then the attracting fixed point of $F_i = f_{i_1}\cdots f_{i_n}$ has base–3 expansion $0.i_1\ldots i_n\ldots$.

This is clear upon noting that $\alpha_{F_i} \in F_i([0,1])$, and $\alpha_{F_i^k} = \alpha_{F_i}$ for each positive integer $k$. Hence

$$\alpha_{F_i} \in F_i^k([0,1]) = f_{i_1}\cdots f_{i_n}f_{i_1}\cdots f_{i_n}\ldots f_{i_1}\cdots f_{i_n}([0,1])$$

for all $k$. Recall that a point lies in $B^+$ exactly when its address is not eventually constant. Hence for every $n > 1$ and every $i \in \{0,2\}^n$, the point $\alpha_{F_i}$ is a buried point. Any nonelementary subsemigroup of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ contains many subsemigroups for which the conclusions above are valid, and so many of its attracting fixed points are also buried points in $\Lambda^+$.

In fact our description of $D^+$ generalises beyond subsemigroups of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$: Suppose $S$ is generated by $\mathcal{F} = \{f_1,\ldots,f_m\}$, where each $f_j$ lies in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$. Further suppose that the limit sets of $S$ are disjoint. Then, using ideas similar to those used above, it is possible to show that $D^+$ is the collection of points in $\Lambda^+$ for which there exists a sequence $i_n \in \{1,2,\ldots,m\}$ for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, where every finite sequence taking values in $\{1,2,\ldots,m\}$ occurs somewhere along the infinite sequence $(i_1,i_2,\ldots,i_n,\ldots)$.

Returning to the Cantor semigroup, we show that its forward point transitive limit set, $\Lambda^+_p$, is empty. To see this, recall that, as remarked after the proof of Theorem 4.6, for any $z \in \Lambda^+_p$ the closure of $S^{-1}(z)$ covers $\overline{\Omega}$. Accordingly we claim that for any $z \in \Lambda^+$ the orbit $S^{-1}(z)$ is not dense in $\overline{\Omega} = \mathbb{R}$. Choose $z \in \Lambda^+$ with base–3 expansion $0.i_0i_1\ldots$
2. ON THE STRUCTURE OF THE LIMIT SETS

and choose any \( j = (j_0, \ldots, j_{n-1}) \in \{0, 2\}^n \). If \( F_j = f_{j_0} \cdots f_{j_{n-1}} \) then \( F_j^{-1}(z) \in [0, 1] \) if and only if \( (i_0, \ldots, i_{n-1}) = (j_0, \ldots, j_{n-1}) \). Moreover if \( (i_0, \ldots, i_{n-1}) = (j_0, \ldots, j_{n-1}) \), then \( F_j^{-1}(z) \in \Lambda^+ \). Hence \( S^{-1}(z) \) does not meet \([0, 1] \setminus \Lambda^+\), which proves the claim.

It should perhaps not be surprising that the Cantor semigroup has an empty point transitive limit set, as it is known (see [34, Theorem 2.3.3]) that a Kleinian group whose limit set is not the full ideal boundary necessarily has an empty point transitive limit set. We do not know if something similar is true for semidiscrete semigroups.

2.4. The limit sets of the group and inverse free parts of a semigroup. Recall from Section 1 that the inverse free part of a semigroup \( S \) is the semigroup \( S \setminus S^{-1} \) of elements in \( S \) whose inverses do not belong to \( S \). In this section we consider the limit sets of \( S \setminus S^{-1} \) when \( S \) is not a group. Throughout we let \( G \) denote \( S \cap S^{-1} \), the group part of \( S \).

**Theorem 4.12.** If \( S \) is a semigroup and is not a group, then \( \Lambda^+(S) = \Lambda^+(S \setminus G) \) and \( \Lambda^-(S) = \Lambda^-(S \setminus G) \). Moreover we have \( \Lambda^+_c(S) = \Lambda^+_c(S \setminus G) \) and \( \Lambda^-_c(S) = \Lambda^-_c(S \setminus G) \).

**Proof.** Clearly \( \Lambda^{+}(S \setminus G) \subseteq \Lambda^{+}(S) \). We show that \( \Lambda^{+}(S) \subseteq \Lambda^{+}(S \setminus G) \). For any \( z \in \Lambda^+(S) \), choose a sequence \( g_n \in S \) such that

\[
\lim_{n \to \infty} g_n(0) = z.
\]

Now choose \( h \in S \setminus G \) and note that

\[
\lim_{n \to \infty} g_n h(0) = z.
\]

Lemma 2.1 tell us that \( g_n h \) lies in \( S \setminus G \), so that we have \( z \in \Lambda^+(S \setminus G) \). Hence we have shown that

\[
\Lambda^+(S \setminus G) = \Lambda^+(S).
\]

Moreover, if \( g_n(0) \) converges to \( z \) conically, then \( g_n h(0) \) also converges to \( z \) conically, and so this reasoning also tells us that \( \Lambda^+_c(S) = \Lambda^+_c(S \setminus G) \). As usual, the corresponding statements for the backward limit sets follow upon replacing \( S \) with \( S^{-1} \) in the preceding arguments. \( \square \)
The theorem above tells us that provided a semigroup $S$ is not a group, the limit sets and conical limit sets of the inverse free part of $S$ are equal to the corresponding limit sets of $S$ itself. In fact the same is true of both horospherical limit sets. In order to prove this we need a geometrical lemma. Recall that $[\alpha, \beta]$ denotes the hyperbolic geodesic between two points $\alpha$ and $\beta$ in hyperbolic space. Similarly $(\alpha, \beta]$ denotes the hyperbolic geodesic between $\alpha$ and $\beta$ with the point $\alpha$ removed. Throughout the remainder of this section, for any set $X \subseteq \mathbb{B}^3$ and $M \geq 0$ we let $X_M$ denote the set of points that are less than a hyperbolic distance of $M$ from some point in $X$.

**Lemma 4.13.** Given any $x \in \mathbb{B}^3$ and $y \in (z, x]$ we have

$$(H_z(y))_{\rho(x, y)} = H_z(x).$$

**Proof.** It is convenient to work in the upper half-space model and conjugate so that $z = \infty$. Then $H_z(y) = \{ w \in \mathbb{H}^3 \mid \text{ht}[w] > \text{ht}[y] \}$ for any $y \in \mathbb{H}^3$. For any $t > 0$ the set of points that are less than a hyperbolic distance $t$ from $H_z(y)$ is exactly the horoball $(H_z(y))_t = \{ w \in \mathbb{H}^3 \mid \text{ht}[w] > \text{ht}[y - ju] \}$ where $u > 0$ is such that $t = \rho(y - ju, y)$. It follows that for any $y \in [x, \infty)$ we have $(H_z(y))_{\rho(x, y)} = \{ w \in \mathbb{H}^3 \mid \text{ht}[w] > \text{ht}[x] \} = H_z(x).$ □

**Theorem 4.14.** If $S$ is a semigroup and is not a group, then

$$\Lambda^+_h(S \setminus G) = \Lambda^+_h(S).$$

**Proof.** Let $\Lambda^+_{h,x}(S)$ denote the points $z \in \Lambda^+(S)$ such that some horoball based at $z$ does not meet the $S$-orbit of $x$. It is easy to see that

$$\Lambda^+_{h,x}(S) = \Lambda^+_h(S)$$

for all $x \in \mathbb{B}^3$. Using Lemma 4.13 we show that

$$\Lambda^+_{h,x}(S \setminus G) = \Lambda^+_{h,x}(S)$$

for any $x \in \mathbb{B}^3$. Given any $x \in \mathbb{B}^3$ we certainly have

$$\Lambda^+_{h,x}(S \setminus G) \subseteq \Lambda^+_{h,x}(S).$$
To show the reverse inclusion suppose \( z \) is a point in \( \Lambda_{h,x}^+ (S) \) and \( g_n \) is a sequence in \( S \) such that the sequence of points \( g_n(x) \) meets any horoball based at \( z \). By assumption we can choose some \( f \not\in G \), and again appealing to Lemma 2.1, we see that the element \( g_n f \) lies in \( S \setminus G \), itself a semigroup. Moreover

\[
\rho(g_n f(x), g_n(x)) = \rho(f(x), x).
\]

Let \( H_z(u) \) be any horoball based at \( z \). Then by the claim we can choose \( v \in B^3 \) such that

\[
(H_z(v))_{\rho(f(0),0)} \subseteq H_z(u).
\]

Since \( g_n(x) \) meets \( H_z(v) \) it follows \( g_n f(x) \) meets \( H_z(u) \). Since \( H_z(u) \) was arbitrary we have a sequence of points \( g_n f(x) \) in the \( S \setminus G \) orbit of \( x \) which meets every horoball based at \( z \). Hence we have shown that

\[
\Lambda_{h,x}^+(S \setminus G) = \Lambda_{h,x}^+(S),
\]

and so

\[
\Lambda_h^+(S \setminus G) = \Lambda_h^+(S).
\]

\[\square\]

**Theorem 4.15.** Either \( \Lambda^+(S) = \Lambda(G) \) or \( \Lambda(G) \subseteq \overline{\Lambda^+(S) \setminus \Lambda(G)} \). In other words \( \Lambda^+(S) = \Lambda(G) \) or \( \Lambda^+ = \overline{\Lambda^+(S) \setminus \Lambda(G)} \).

**Proof.** Each \( g \in G \) fixes \( \Lambda \) setwise, and so each \( g \) maps \( \Lambda^+(S) \setminus \Lambda(G) \), and hence its closure, into itself. Now either \( \overline{\Lambda^+(S) \setminus \Lambda(G)} \) has less than two points, in which case \( \Lambda^+(S) = \Lambda(G) \), or as the smallest \( G \)-forward invariant set containing at least two points, \( \Lambda^+(S) \setminus \Lambda(G) \) is contained in \( \overline{\Lambda^+(S) \setminus \Lambda(G)} \). But \( \Lambda^+(G) = \Lambda(G) \) which gives the result. \[\square\]

As usual the analogous version of the theorem above for the backward limit set follows upon replacing \( S \) with \( S^{-1} \). Shown in Figure 4.3 are the limit sets of the semidiscrete semigroup found by taking the Kleinian group \( G \) generated by (see [33], page 272) the two transformations

\[
z \mapsto \frac{(0.8210 - 0.3832i)z + (0.3832 + 1.8210i)}{(-0.3832 + 0.1789i)z + (0.8210 - 0.3832)}
\]
Figure 4.3. Limit sets of a semigroup with nonempty group and inverse free parts

\[ z \mapsto \frac{(1 - i)z + 1}{z + (1 + i)}, \]

then, in the spirit of Theorem 2.20 appending the generator

\[ z \mapsto \frac{(2.77 - 1.63i)z + (2.25 - 5.22i)}{(1.74 + 0.0213i)z + (2.77 - 1.63i)}, \]

The forward limit set is in red, while the backward limit set is in blue. They intersect on the purple set, which is the limit set of the Kleinian group \( G \). Each point in the purple set is a limit point of the red set, and a limit point of the blue set.
In general, if a semidiscrete semigroup $S$ has a nonelementary group part $G$, then $\Lambda^+(S) \cap \Lambda^-(S)$ contains $\Lambda(G)$, necessarily a perfect set. It is an open problem, even in two dimensions, whether or not the converse is true. That is, if $S$ is a semidiscrete semigroup and $\Lambda^+(S) \cap \Lambda^-(S)$ is a perfect set, must $S$ necessarily have a nonelementary group part? This question is particularly interesting in view of Theorems 3.33 and 3.35.

3. On semigroups with disjoint limit sets

In this section we study semidiscrete and inverse free semigroups that are finitely-generated and have disjoint limit sets. We shall show in Theorem 4.16 that if a finitely-generated semigroup has disjoint limit sets, then, provided it has no elliptic generators, it is semidiscrete and inverse free too. Semigroups that belong to this class are very well behaved, even in higher dimensions. For example, in [15] the authors show that given a finitely-generated semigroup $S$ acting in three dimensions and with disjoint limit sets, there exists a metric (which they construct) defined on some open set containing $\Lambda^+$, with respect to which the semigroup can be regarded as a contracting iterated function system with limit set $\Lambda^+$. We shall show that if we further suppose $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free, then there exists a finitely-generated subsemigroup of $S$ that can be regarded as a contracting iterated function system with respect to the chordal metric on some open set containing $\Lambda^+$, and which has limit set $\Lambda^+$.

In Chapter 3 we characterised semidiscrete and inverse free semigroups in two dimensions. In higher dimensions we have the following.

**Theorem 4.16.** Suppose $\mathcal{F}$ is a finite subset of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ such that the identity and any elliptic maps in $\mathcal{F}$ generate a group of finite order. If the limit sets of $S = \langle \mathcal{F} \rangle$ are disjoint, then $S$ is semidiscrete. If moreover $\mathcal{F}$ does not contain the identity or any elliptic maps, then $S$ is inverse free.

**Proof.** Since the limit sets of $S$ are disjoint, $\mathcal{F}$ contains no parabolic elements. The identity and any elliptic elements in $\mathcal{F}$ fix $\Lambda^+$ setwise, as their inverses also lie in $S$ and $\Lambda^+$ is forward invariant. Any other elements in $\mathcal{F}$ are loxodromic. If any loxodromic $f \in \mathcal{F}$ were to fix $\Lambda^+$, then both fixed points of $f$ must lie in $\Lambda^+$. This is not possible as
the repelling fixed point of $f$ lies in $\Lambda^-$, which by assumption does not meet $\Lambda^+$. Hence each loxodromic element in $F$ maps $\Lambda^+$ strictly inside itself. It now follows that $S$ is semidiscrete by Theorem 2.5. If moreover $F$ does not contain the identity or any elliptic maps, then $F$ must be purely loxodromic and no element in $F$ fixes $\Lambda^+$ setwise. Hence, again by Theorem 2.5, $S$ is also inverse free. □

For any $f \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ we define the quantity $L(f)$ by

$$L(f) = \sup_{z, w \in \mathbb{S}^2 \atop z \neq w} \frac{\chi(f(z), f(w))}{\chi(z, w)},$$

and shall make use of the following equation given in [3, Theorem 3.6.1]

(12) $$L(f) = \exp[\rho(0, f(0))].$$

We shall make repeated use of the following important property enjoyed by all semigroups generated by a bounded set. Recall that $\overline{F}$ denotes the closure of $F$ in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$.

**Lemma 4.17.** Let $S$ be a semigroup generated by some bounded set $F$. Then

$$\Lambda^+(S) = \bigcup_{f \in \overline{F}} f(\Lambda^+(S)).$$

**Proof.** One inclusion is clear from the forward invariance of $\Lambda^+ = \Lambda^+(S)$. For the other inclusion, suppose $z \in \Lambda^+$ and fix some sequence $g_n \in S$ such that $g_n(0) \to z$. We show $z$ lies in $f(\Lambda^+)$ for some $f \in \overline{F}$. For each $n$ we can choose $f_n \in F$ and $h_n \in S \cup \{I\}$ such that $g_n = f_nh_n$. By compactness we can pass to a subsequence, without loss of generality the sequence itself, such that $f_n \to f \in \overline{F}$. Now it follows that $\chi(f_nh_n(0), z) \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$, and so

$$\frac{1}{L(f_n^{-1})} \chi(h_n(0), f_n^{-1}(z)) \to 0 \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty,$$

by the definition of $L(f_n^{-1})$. Making use of equation (12), for each $f \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ we have $L(f) = \exp[\rho(0, f(0))] = \exp[\rho(f^{-1}(0), 0)] = L(f^{-1})$, and as $F$ is bounded, it follows that $\{L(f) \mid f \in \overline{F}\}$ is bounded above. Hence $\chi(h_n(0), f^{-1}(z)) \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$, and so $f^{-1}(z) \in \Lambda^+$. We have shown that for all $z \in \Lambda^+$ there exists $f \in \overline{F}$ such that $z \in f(\Lambda^+)$. Hence we have proven the other inclusion. □
**Theorem 4.18.** Let $S$ be a semigroup generated by a finite set $\mathcal{F}$. If $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free and the limit sets of $S$ are disjoint, then for each point $p$ in $\Lambda^+$ there is a composition sequence generated by $\mathcal{F}$ that converges conically to $p$. Moreover, every composition sequence converges conically to a single point on the ideal boundary, and in particular, converges ideally.

**Proof.** We first show that each point $z$ in $\Lambda^+$ also lies in $\Lambda_+^c$. By Lemma 4.17 there exists $f_1 \in \mathcal{F}$ and $z_1 \in \Lambda^+$ such that $z = z_0 = f_1(z_1)$. Similarly there exists $f_2 \in \mathcal{F}$ and $z_2 \in \Lambda^+$ such that $z_1 = f_2(z_2)$ so that $z = f_1 f_2(z_2)$. Continuing in this way we recursively choose $f_n \in \mathcal{F}$ and $z_n \in \Lambda^+$ such that $z_n = f_1 \cdots f_n(z_0)$. Writing $F_n = f_1 \cdots f_n$ we have $z_n = F_n^{-1}(z)$.

Since $I \notin S$ the sequence $F_n$ is escaping. By Theorem 4.2 if $z$ did not lie in the backward conical limit set of the sequence $F_n^{-1}$, then $z_n$ must accumulate only in $\Lambda^-$; but this cannot be as $z_n$ is a sequence in $\Lambda^+$. Hence we must have

$$z \in \Lambda^c_-(F_n^{-1}) = \Lambda^+_c(F_n) \subseteq \Lambda^+_c(S)$$

as claimed. In fact $F_n$ converges to $z$ ideally. Indeed, we show that every composition sequence converges ideally, as the theorem also asserts. To see this, consider $C(\Lambda^+)$, the convex hull of $\Lambda^+$, that is the smallest hyperbolically convex subset of $\mathbb{B}^3$ containing every geodesic whose landing points both belongs to $\Lambda^+$. As $\Lambda^+$ is forward invariant under $S$, so is $C(\Lambda^+)$. Since the limit sets are disjoint and $F_n^{-1}$ is escaping, $\rho(F_n^{-1}(0), C(\Lambda^+)) \to \infty$ as $n \to \infty$. Hence $\rho(0, F_n(C(\Lambda^+))) = \rho(0, C(F_n(\Lambda^+))) \to \infty$ as $n \to \infty$. Since $F_n(\Lambda^+)$ is a decreasing nested sequence of sets and its chordal diameter converges to 0, $z$ is the only accumulation point of $F_n$. It follows that $F_n(0)$ converges conically to $z$. \hfill \Box

Recall that for a semigroup $S$, the set $\Lambda^+_q$ is the collection of points in $\Lambda^+$ that are limit points of some composition sequence generated by $S$. Hence for a semigroup $S$ as above, $\Lambda^+ = \Lambda^+_c = \Lambda^+_q$. Furthermore, since $S$ has disjoint limit sets and is semidiscrete and inverse free, then $S^{-1}$ also enjoys these properties. It follows that we also have $\Lambda^- = \Lambda^-_c = \Lambda^-_q$. We cannot drop the assumption that $\mathcal{F}$ is bounded, as the following example demonstrates.
Take loxodromic elements \( g \) and \( h \) in \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{D}) \) whose axes are configured as in Figure 4.4 below.

![Figure 4.4. Loxodromic maps \( g \) and \( h \)](image)

Let \( X \) be the complementary component of \( S^1 \setminus \{\alpha_g, \alpha_h\} \) that does not meet either generator’s repelling fixed point. Let \( \mathcal{F} \) be the unbounded set \( \{gh, g^2h^2, g^3h^3, \ldots\} \) and let \( S \) be the semigroup generated by \( \mathcal{F} \). Then \( \alpha_g \in \Lambda^+ (S) \) since \( g^n h^n(0) \to \alpha_g \) as \( n \to \infty \). Yet for any composition sequence \( F_n \) generated by \( \mathcal{F} \), we have, for all \( n \), \( F_n(X) = f_1 \cdots f_n(X) \subseteq f_1(X) = g^m h^m(X) \) for some \( m \in \mathbb{N} \). Hence \( F_n(0) \) can only accumulate in \( g^m h^m(X) \), and in particular, \( F_n(0) \) does not accumulate at \( \alpha_g \). This means that \( \Lambda^+_q(S) \) is not equal to \( \Lambda^+(S) \) for this particular example.

### 3.1. A sufficient condition for discreteness

In [10, Theorem 10] the author shows that if a finitely-generated subsemigroup of \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{D}) \) has disjoint limit sets, then the semigroup must be discrete. In this subsection we show that the same is true in all dimensions if we additionally suppose \( S \) is generated by a set of loxodromic elements.

Recall that if \( X \) is a subset of a topological space, its derived set, denoted \( X' \), is the set of limit points of \( X \). Hence a semigroup \( S \) is discrete precisely when \( S' \) is empty. It is easy to check that \( \overline{S} \) is also a semigroup whose limit sets coincide with those of \( S \). Motivated by this, we begin by studying \( S' \), which it turns out is a semigroup in its own right. For any \( A, B \subseteq \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3) \) we define \( AB \) to be the set \( \{ab \mid a \in A \text{ and } b \in B\} \).

**Theorem 4.19.** Suppose \( S \) is a semigroup, then

(i) \( S' \) is a semigroup,

(ii) \( SS' \) and \( S'S \) are subsets of \( S' \), and
(iii) if $S'$ is nonempty then $\Lambda^+(S) = \Lambda^+(S')$ and $\Lambda^+_c(S) = \Lambda^+_c(S').$ Similarly $\Lambda^-(S) = \Lambda^-(S')$ and $\Lambda^-_c(S) = \Lambda^-_c(S').$

**Proof.** We must show $S'$ is closed under composition. Suppose that $g, h \in S'$, say

$$g = \lim_{n \to \infty} g_n$$

and

$$h = \lim_{n \to \infty} h_n$$

where $g_n$ and $h_n$ are sequences of distinct elements in $S \setminus \{g\}$ and $S \setminus \{h\}$ respectively. Since the group of Möbius transformations is a topological group we have

$$gh = \lim_{n \to \infty} g_nh_n.$$ 

If $g_nh_n$ contains a subsequence of distinct elements in $S \setminus \{gh\}$ then $gh \in S'$. Otherwise $g_nh_n = gh$ for all large enough $n$. Since $h_n \neq h_{n+1}$ we must have $g_nh_{n+1} \neq gh$, and as

$$gh = \lim_{n \to \infty} g_nh_{n+1}$$

we have $gh \in S'$ in this case too.

To see $SS' \subseteq S'$ suppose again that $g \in S'$ via

$$g = \lim_{n \to \infty} g_n$$

where $g_n$ are distinct elements in $S \setminus \{g\}$. Now for any $h \in S$, $hg_n$ is a sequence of distinct points in $S \setminus \{hg\}$ and converges to $hg$. Hence $hg$ lies in $S'$ as claimed.

Now suppose $S$ has a nonempty derived set. We first show that $\Lambda^+(S) \subseteq \Lambda^+(S').$ Working in the ball model, suppose $z \in \Lambda^+(S)$ and choose a sequence $f_n$ in $S$ such that

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} f_n(0) = z.$$ 

Since $S'$ is nonempty we can choose some $g \in S'$. Since

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} f_ng(0) = z$$
and $SS' \subseteq S'$, it follows that $z \in \Lambda^+(S')$.

For the converse, suppose $z$ lies in $\Lambda^+(S')$ and $h_n$ is a sequence in $S'$ such that

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} h_n(0) = z.$$ 

Since each $h_n$ lies in $S'$ we can choose a sequence $g_n$ in $S$ such that $\sigma(g_n, h_n) < 1/n$ for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Hence $\chi(g_n(0), h_n(0)) < 1/n$, so that $g_n(0)$ also converges to $z$, and we see that $z \in \Lambda^+$.

To show the conical limit sets of $S$ and $S'$ coincide, we suppose that $f_n$ is a sequence in $S$ and that $f_n(0) \to z$ conically as $n \to \infty$. Since $\rho(f_ng(0), f_n(0)) = \rho(g(0), 0)$ it follows that for any $g \in S'$ $f_ng(0)$ converges to $z$ conically. Since $SS'$ is contained in $S'$ we see that $\Lambda^+_c(S) \subseteq \Lambda^+_c(S')$. For the reverse inclusion we use a version of the argument we used to show $\Lambda^+(S) \subseteq \Lambda^+(S')$: Suppose $z$ lies in $\Lambda^+_c(S')$ via some sequence $h_n$ in $S'$ such that $h_n(0)$ converges to $z$ conically. Since the map that sends any $g \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ to $g(0) \in \mathbb{B}^3$ is continuous, it follows that we can choose $g_n \in S$ such that $\rho(g_n(0), h_n(0)) < 1$. Hence $g_n(0)$ converges to $z$ conically, and so $z$ lies in $\Lambda^+_c(S)$.

As usual the results for the backward limit sets follow upon considering $S^{-1}$ instead of $S$, and noting that the map $g \to g^{-1}$ from $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ to itself is a homeomorphism. □

Before proving the main result of this subsection, we need a preparatory lemma.

**Lemma 4.20.** Suppose $S$ is a semigroup generated by a finite set $F$. Then for all $g \in S'$ there exists $f \in F$ such that $f^{-1}g \in S'$.

**Proof.** Given any $g \in S'$ we can choose a sequence of distinct elements $g_n \in S \setminus \{g\}$, such that $g_n \to g$. Since $F$ is finite, for some $f \in F$ we can pass to a subsequence, which we do not rename, such that

$$g_n = fh_n,$$

where $h_n$ is a sequence of distinct elements in $\in S \setminus \{f^{-1}g\}$. Since $h_n \to f^{-1}g$ it follows that $f^{-1}g \in S'$ as claimed. □
**Theorem 4.21.** Let $S$ be a semigroup generated by a finite set $\mathcal{F}$. If $I \not\in S$ and the limit sets $\Lambda^+$ and $\Lambda^-$ are disjoint, then $S$ is discrete.

**Proof.** We show that if $S$ is not discrete then $\Lambda^+$ and $\Lambda^-$ must meet. If $S$ is not discrete then $S'$ is nonempty so we can choose $g \in S'$. Repeatedly applying Lemma 4.20 above, we can generate a sequence $f_n \in \mathcal{F}$ such that

$$f_n^{-1} \cdots f_1^{-1} g \in S'$$

for each $n$. We let $F_n = f_1 \cdots f_n$ for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Since $I \not\in S$, the composition sequence $F_n$ is escaping by Theorem 2.7, hence both $F_n^{-1}g$ and $F_n^{-1}$ are escaping sequences, and in particular have at least one accumulation point on $S^2$. The sequence $F_n^{-1}g$ lies in $S'$ while $F_n^{-1}$ lies in $S^{-1}$. Since

$$\rho(F_n^{-1}g(0), F_n^{-1}(0)) = \rho(g(0), (0))$$

any accumulation point $\zeta$ of $F_n^{-1}(0)$ is an accumulation point of $F_n^{-1}g(0)$, so that $\zeta$ lies in both $\Lambda^-(S)$ and $\Lambda^+(S')$. Finally by Proposition 4.19 $\Lambda^+(S') = \Lambda^+(S)$, and so $\Lambda^+(S)$ meets $\Lambda^-(S)$ at $\zeta$. \hfill \Box

### 3.2. Perturbed semigroups.

In the following subsection we investigate what happens to the limit sets of a semigroup $S = \langle \mathcal{F} \rangle$ when its generating set $\mathcal{F}$, considered as an $|\mathcal{F}|$-tuple of Möbius transformations, is perturbed. By perturbing a semigroup we mean perturbing each of its generators in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$. Most of the results given here assume that $\mathcal{F}$ is finite, although we occasionally only require $\mathcal{F}$ to be bounded.

Suppose that $S$ is a finitely-generated, semidiscrete and inverse free semigroup. Our first theorem indicates that if the limit sets of $S$ are disjoint, then they behave nicely as the generators of $S$ are perturbed. Before stating this theorem more precisely, we first give an important lemma, which we shall use again at the close of this chapter.

**Lemma 4.22.** Let $S$ be a semidiscrete and inverse free semigroup generated by a finite set $\mathcal{F}$. Then for all $M > 0$ there exists a finite subset $\mathcal{F}_M$ of $S$, such that for all $f \in \mathcal{F}_M$, $\rho(f(0), 0) > M$, and $\Lambda^+(S) = \Lambda^+(S_M)$ where $S_M$ is the semigroup generated by $\mathcal{F}_M$. In
4. LIMIT SETS

In particular,

$$\Lambda^+(S) = \bigcup_{f \in F_M} f(\Lambda^+(S)).$$

**Proof.** Choose $M > 0$ and let us write $N = \{0, 1, \ldots, N - 1\}$, so that $N^n$ is the set of $n$ tuples on the set $\{0, 1, \ldots, N - 1\}$. Let $T = N^{<\omega}$ be the union $\bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} N^n$, which we endow with the usual partial order relation, that is, for $s, t \in T$, then $s \leq t$ if and only if the domain of $s$ is contained in the domain of $t$, and $s$ agrees with $t$ on the domain of $s$. Equipped with this partial ordering $T$ is a tree. Letting $F = \{f_0, \ldots, f_{N-1}\}$, the elements of $T$ may be regarded as words in $F$, and so as elements of $S$. More precisely we make use of the projection

$$\pi : T \to S$$

given by

$$\pi((i_0, \ldots, i_{N-1})) = f_{i_0} \cdots f_{i_{N-1}}.$$

The projection is injective exactly when $S$ is free. The $n^{th}$ level of $T$ is the set $N^n$, which corresponds to the collection of $n$-length words generated from $F$. The level to which an element in $T$ belongs is called its *height*, and we write $ht(t)$ to denote the height of $t \in T$. We say two elements $s, t \in T$ are *comparable* if $s \leq t$ or $t \leq s$, otherwise they are *incomparable*. A *cofinal branch* of $T$ is any maximal, linearly ordered subset of $T$ that meets every level.

To prove the lemma we find a set $T_M \subseteq T$ such that;

(i) $T_M$ is a finite set of pairwise incomparable elements,

(ii) $\rho(\pi(t)(0), 0) > M$ for each $t \in T_M$,

(iii) for each $t \in T$ there is some (unique by (i), although we do not use uniqueness) $s \in T_M$ such that $s$ and $t$ are comparable, and,

(iv)$$\Lambda^+ = \bigcup_{t \in T_M} \pi(t)(\Lambda^+).$$

In order to find $T_M$, we recursively construct a monotonically increasing nest of sets $T_M(n) \subseteq T$. We define $T_M(0) = \emptyset$. Suppose that for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the set $T_M(n - 1)$ has
been constructed. Now consider all elements in the $n$th level of $T$ which are not greater than some element in $T_M(n - 1)$, that is the set

$$L_n = N^n \setminus \{ t \in T \mid s \leq t \; \text{for some} \; s \in T_M(n - 1) \}.$$ 

Now put

$$T_M(n) = T_M(n - 1) \cup \{ t \in L_n \mid \rho(\pi(t)(0), 0) > M \}.$$ 

We show that $L_n$ is empty for some $n$. For if not, then $T' = \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} L_n$ is a tree of height $\omega$. We claim $T'$ is a tree. To see this, it is enough to show that for any $t \in T'$ and $s \leq t$ we have $s \in T'$. Suppose towards contradiction that $s \notin T'$. Then $s \notin L_{ht(s)}$, so that $r \leq s$ for some $r \in T_M(ht(s) - 1) \subseteq T_M(ht(t) - 1)$. But then $t \leq s \leq t$ which contradicts $t \in L_{ht(t)}$. Hence $T'$ is a tree as claimed. Since $T'$ has height $\omega$ and each level is finite, König’s lemma (see [23, Lemma 14.2]) implies it contains a linearly ordered subset of $T$ that intersects every level, $j \in \mathbb{N}^\omega$ say. The associated sequence of Möbius transformations has $n$th term $F_n = f_{j_0} \cdots f_{j_{n-1}}$. This is a composition sequence satisfying $\rho(F_n(0), 0) \leq M$ for all $n$, contradicting our assumption that $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free by Theorem [2.7]. Hence each $L_n$ is eventually empty after all. This means that there is a set, which we take to be $T_M$, such that $T_M(n) = T_M$ for all large enough $n$. We set $F_M = \pi(T_M)$, and verify that $T_M$ has all four properties claimed. To see (i), since each $L_n$ is eventually empty, $T_M$ is finite. For each $n$ when constructing the set $T_M(n)$ we only append elements to $T_M(n - 1)$ that are incomparable with each other, and with every element already in $T_M(n - 1)$. It follows that any two elements in $T_M$ are incomparable, giving (i). Property (ii) clearly holds by the construction. If (iii) were false, then for some $t \in T$ there would be no $s \in T_M$ such that $s < t$. But then $L_n$ is not empty for each $n \geq ht(t)$, a contradiction. To see (iv), first let $h$ be the maximum of the heights of elements in $T_M$, and choose any $z \in \Lambda^+$. Then there is a sequence $g_n \in S$ such that $g_n(0) \to z$ as $n \to \infty$. Now by property (iii) any $t \in T$ may be written as the concatenation of elements in $T_M$, followed by some element of height no more than $h$. 
Since each Möbius map $g_n$ lifts to an element in $T$, each $g_n$ can be expressed as

$$g_n = f_{i(1,n)}f_{i(2,n)}\cdots f_{i(l(n),n)}r_n,$$

where each $f_{i(j,n)}$ belongs to $T_M$, $i(m,n) \in N$ and $r_n \in S$ where $r_n$, regarded as a word in $F$, has length no more than $h$. Since $F$ is finite, the set of compositions of no more than $h$ elements from $F$ forms a bounded set, hence

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} f_{i(1,n)}f_{i(2,n)}\cdots f_{i(l(n),n)}(0) = z.$$

This shows that $\Lambda^+(S) \subseteq \Lambda^+(S_M)$, and as the reverse inclusion is clear we have $\Lambda^+(S) = \Lambda^+(S_M)$. Since $F_M$ is finite we can apply Lemma 4.17 to the semigroup $S_M$ and infer (iv). \hfill \Box

This lemma verifies the statement made in the introduction to this section, that a finitely-generated, semidiscrete and inverse free semigroup with disjoint limits sets can be regarded as a contracting iterated function system with respect to the chordal metric on some open neighbourhood of $\Lambda^+$, and with limit set $\Lambda^+$. To see this, first recall from Chapter 1 that for a loxodromic map $f$, the isometric disc of $f$, which we shall denote by $I^+(f)$, is the open chordal disc contained in $\mathbb{C}$ where the chordal derivative of $f$ is greater than 1. We let $I^-(f)$ denote the isometric disc of $f^{-1}$, and note that $I^-(f)$, contains $\alpha_f$ while $I^+(f)$ contains $\beta_f$. Both isometric discs have radius $1/\sinh[\frac{1}{2}\beta(f(0), 0)]$. The action of $f$ is to map the interior of the complement of $I^+(f)$ onto $I^-(f)$. If $S = \langle F \rangle$ is a finitely-generated, semidiscrete and inverse free semigroup with disjoint limits sets, then we can choose $M$ large enough such that the isometric discs of each map in $F_M$ do not meet $\Lambda^+$. Then $S_M = \langle F_M \rangle$ is a subsemigroup of $S$ and inherits its limit sets. Moreover each $f \in F_M$ is a strict contraction (with respect to the chordal metric) on $\Lambda^+$. This shows that given a finitely-generated semidiscrete and inverse free semigroup whose limit sets are disjoint and some positive real number $M$, we can always find a subsemigroup whose generators all have norm at least $M$ and whose limit sets are equal to those of the original semigroup.

So far in this thesis, we have regarded the generating set of a semigroup as an unordered set of Möbius transformations. In this subsection it is sometimes convenient to enumerate $F$ as a (finite) sequence, and instead regard the generators of a semigroup as a point in
Aut(\(B^3\)). To emphasise this new point of view, instead of referring to \(F \subseteq \text{Aut}(B^3)\) as a generating set, we shall say \(F\) is a generating sequence. We shall say that the generating sequence \(F\) is bounded if the range of \(F\) is bounded in \(\text{Aut}(B^3)\), and we shall denote by \(\langle F \rangle\) the semigroup generated by the range of \(F\). For \(k \in \mathbb{N}\) we endow \(\text{Aut}(B^3)^k\) with a product metric: we define the distance between points \((f_1, \ldots, f_k)\) and \((g_1, \ldots, g_k)\) in \(\text{Aut}(B^3)^k\) by \(\max_{i=1, \ldots, k} \sigma(f_i, g_i)\). In fact the choice of metric is not particularly important and we shall not need its explicit form again. Indeed, any of the usual product metrics which induce the same topology as the one above will suffice for our purposes.

**Theorem 4.23.** Suppose \(S\) is generated by the finite set \(\{f_1, \ldots, f_k\} \subseteq \text{Aut}(B^3)\) and that \(S\) is semidiscrete and inverse free. If the limit sets of \(S\) are disjoint, then in some neighbourhood of \(F = (f_1, \ldots, f_k) \in \text{Aut}(B^3)^k\) (with respect to the product topology on \(\text{Aut}(B^3)\)) the functions from \(\text{Aut}(B^3)^k\) to the collection of compact subsets of \(S^2\) (endowed with the usual Hausdorff metric) given by

\[F \mapsto \Lambda^+\left(\langle F \rangle\right)\] and \(F \mapsto \Lambda^-\left(\langle F \rangle\right)\)

are continuous.

**Proof.** By symmetry of argument we only need to show that the function \(F \mapsto \Lambda^+\left(\langle F \rangle\right)\) is continuous. We show that for all small enough \(\epsilon > 0\) there exists \(\delta > 0\) such that whenever \(G\) is within \(\delta\) of \(F\) in \(\text{Aut}(B^3)^k\), we have \(\Lambda^+\left(\langle G \rangle\right)\) within \(\epsilon\) of \(\Lambda^+\left(\langle F \rangle\right)\) in the Hausdorff metric. Let \(\pi_F : k^{<\omega} \to \langle F \rangle\) denote the projection map that sends an element in the tree \(k^{<\omega}\) to its associated Möbius transformation in \(\langle F \rangle\). By Lemma 4.22 there exists \(T \subseteq k^{<\omega}\) such that \(\Lambda^+\left(\langle \pi_F(T) \rangle\right) = \Lambda^+\left(\langle F \rangle\right)\) and such that for all \(t \in T\), the isometric disc of \(\pi_F(t)\) has diameter smaller than \(\epsilon/6\). We shall assume that the distance between \(\Lambda^+\left(\langle F \rangle\right)\) and \(\Lambda^-\left(\langle F \rangle\right)\) is larger than \(3\epsilon\), so that for no \(s, t \in T\) does \(I^-\left(\pi_F(s)\right)\) meet \(I^+\left(\pi_F(t)\right)\). As \(f\) is contracting with respect to the chordal metric in the interior of \(S^2 \setminus I^+(f)\), the set \(F\) is a contracting iterated function system on \(S^2 \setminus \bigcup_{f \in F} I^+(f)\).
(with respect to the chordal metric) and has limit set $\Lambda^+(\langle F \rangle)$, which is contained in $$\bigcup_{f \in F} I^-(f).$$ Each point in $\Lambda^+(\langle F \rangle)$ is certainly within $\epsilon/6$ of some point in $\bigcup_{f \in F} I^-(f)$. Conversely, given any $f \in F$ and any point in $z \in I^-(f)$, the point $\alpha_f$, which lies in $\Lambda^+(\langle F \rangle)$, is within $\epsilon/6$ of $z$. Hence $z$ lies in the $\epsilon/6$ neighbourhood of $\Lambda^+(\langle F \rangle)$ and it follows that

$$d_H \left( \bigcup_{t \in T} I^-(\pi_F(t)), \Lambda^+(\langle F \rangle) \right) < \epsilon/6. \quad (13)$$

The choice of $T$ ensures that for any $G \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{H}^3)^k$ we have $\Lambda^+(\langle \pi_G(T) \rangle) = \Lambda^+(\langle G \rangle)$. We choose an open neighbourhood $U$ of $F$ small enough such that for each $G \in U$ and $t \in T$ the disc $I^-(\pi_G(t))$ is within $\epsilon/3$ of $I^-(\pi_F(t))$ and $I^+(\pi_G(t))$ is within $\epsilon/3$ of $I^+(\pi_F(t))$ (both with respect to the Hausdorff metric).

Hence we have

$$d_H \left( \bigcup_{t \in T} I^-(\pi_F(t)), \bigcup_{t \in T} I^-(\pi_G(t)) \right) < \epsilon/3. \quad (14)$$

Moreover, we can ensure $U$ is small enough such that the diameter of each $I^-(\pi_G(t))$ is less than $\epsilon/3$, and so by the same argument used to derive (13) we see that

$$d_H \left( \bigcup_{t \in T} I^-(\pi_G(t)), \Lambda^+(\langle G \rangle) \right) < \epsilon/3. \quad (15)$$

Hence by the triangle inequality the relations (13), (14) and (15) imply that

$$d_H \left( \Lambda^+(\langle F \rangle), \Lambda^+(\langle G \rangle) \right) < \epsilon.$$ This shows that $F \mapsto \Lambda^+(\langle F \rangle)$ is continuous. By symmetry of argument $F \mapsto \Lambda^-((\langle F \rangle)$ is continuous as well.

The theorem can fail if the limit sets are not disjoint. For example, consider the subsemigroup of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ generated by two antiparallel loxodromic transformations $g$ and $h$ defined as follows. Let $\sigma$ be a reflection in the geodesic $\ell = [-i, i]$, and let $\sigma_g$ and $\sigma_h$ be reflections in the geodesics $\ell_g = [z, 1]$ and $\ell_h = [\overline{z}, 1]$ respectively, where $z = e^{i\theta}$ for some $\theta \in (0, \pi/2)$. 

\[\Box\]
Let \( g = \sigma_g \sigma \) and \( h = \sigma \sigma_h \) so that \( gh = \sigma_g \sigma_h \) is a parabolic map that fixes 1. Hence the limit sets of the semigroup \( S = \langle g, h \rangle \) meet at 1. However in every neighbourhood of \( g \) there exists a map \( g_1 \) such that \( g_1 h \) is elliptic of infinite order. Since \( g_1 \) and \( h \) do not commute, \( S_1 = \langle g_1, h \rangle \) is dense in \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{D}) \) by [2], and so both limit sets of \( S_1 \) (and in particular \( \Lambda^+(S_1) \)) equal the whole ideal boundary. However \( \Lambda^+(S) \) is a proper subset of the ideal boundary. To see this, let \( J_g \) be the closed arc contained in the unit circle whose end points are the landing points of \( \ell_g \) and which contains \( \alpha_g \). Similarly let \( J_h \) be the arc contained in the unit circle whose end points are the landing points of \( \sigma(\ell_h) \) and which contains \( \alpha_h \). It can be seen that both \( g \) and \( h \) map the set \( J_g \cup J_h \) (the two highlighted arcs in Figure 4.5) within itself, and so \( \Lambda^+(S) \subseteq J_g \cup J_h \).

**Figure 4.5.** The generators \( g, h \) and the arcs \( J_g \) and \( J_h \)

Statements analogous to Theorem 4.23 can be found within the theory of complex dynamics. Let \( \text{Rat}(d) \) be the space of rational maps of degree \( d \), endowed with the compact open topology. A rational map \( f \in \text{Rat}(d) \) is hyperbolic if there exists a smooth conformal metric defined on an open set containing the Julia set \( J(f) \), upon which \( f \) is expanding. It can be shown that for a hyperbolic map \( f \), there is some neighbourhood of \( f \) in \( \text{Rat}(d) \) (endowed with the compact-open topology) upon which \( J(f) \) moves continuously with \( f \). See Branner and Fagella [9, Section 3.4] for further details. For semigroups, (see [15, section 5]) the authors show that if \( S \) acts on \( \overline{\mathbb{C}} \), has disjoint limit sets, and is generated by finitely many non-elliptic maps, then \( S \) enjoys a property analogous to hyperbolicity for
rational maps. Specifically, there is an open set containing $\Lambda^-$ and a metric defined on this set, upon which each element in $S$ is expanding. The metric they define is indeed smooth and conformal. Theorem 4.23 shows that the limit sets of such semigroups vary continuously as the generating set is perturbed, at least within some small neighbourhood.

Theorem 4.23 begs the question: What is the domain of stability of $\Lambda^+$ and $\Lambda^-$? That is for which $\mathcal{F}_0 \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)^k$ is the map $\mathcal{F} \mapsto \Lambda^+((\mathcal{F}))$ continuous in some neighbourhood of $\mathcal{F}_0$? Indeed, one can ask similar questions with respect to other properties on semigroups. For example, is the property of being semidiscrete and inverse free stable under perturbation of the generators; in other words is the set

$$\left\{ \mathcal{F} \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)^k \mid S \text{ is semidiscrete and inverse free} \right\}$$

open in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)^k$?

We can however deduce that the set

$$\left\{ \mathcal{F} \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)^k \mid S \text{ is semidiscrete and inverse free and } \Lambda^+(S) \cap \Lambda^-(S) = \emptyset \right\}$$

is open, for each positive integer $k$. To see this suppose $\mathcal{F} \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)^k$ is such that $\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle$ has disjoint limit sets and is semidiscrete and inverse free. Then $\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle$ contains no elliptic elements or the identity, and so by Theorem 4.23 we can perturb the generators in some neighbourhood of $\mathcal{F}$ and preserve the property that the semigroup they generate has disjoint limit sets. If the perturbation is sufficiently small, then the generators will not contain elliptic maps or the identity, and so by Theorem 4.16 they must generate a semidiscrete and inverse free semigroup.

We can still say something about how the limit sets vary with $\mathcal{F}$, even if the limit sets of $S$ are not disjoint, as the next result shows. Throughout the proof of the next theorem it is convenient to adjust our notation slightly, and denote the attracting fixed point of a loxodromic Möbius transformation $f$ by $\alpha(f)$ instead of $\alpha_f$. For a set $X \subseteq S^2$ and $\epsilon > 0$ we let $(X)_\epsilon$ denote the set of points in $S^2$ whose chordal distance from any point in $X$ is less than $\epsilon$. 
Theorem 4.24. Suppose \( k \in \mathbb{N} \) and let \( \mathcal{F} \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)^k \) be a bounded generating sequence generating a nonelementary semigroup. Then for all \( \epsilon > 0 \) there exists an open neighbourhood \( U \) of \( \mathcal{F} \) such that for all \( \mathcal{G} \in U \),
\[
\Lambda^+(\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle) \subseteq (\Lambda^+(\langle \mathcal{G} \rangle))_{\epsilon}.
\]

Proof. For each \( \mathcal{G} \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)^k \) let \( \pi_{\mathcal{G}} \) be the projection map from \( k^{<\omega} \) to the associated Möbius transformation in \( \langle \mathcal{G} \rangle \). That is, if \( \mathcal{G} = (g_1, \ldots, g_k) \) then
\[
\pi_{\mathcal{G}} : k^{<\omega} \to \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)
\]
is given by
\[
\pi((i_0, \ldots, i_{N-1})) = g_{i_0} \cdots g_{i_{N-1}}
\]
for each \( (i_0, \ldots, i_{N-1}) \in k^{<\omega} \). Since \( \langle \mathcal{F} \rangle \) is nonelementary its set of attracting fixed points is dense in its forward limit set, and so we can choose a finite set of attracting fixed points such that the open \( \epsilon/2 \)-balls centred at these points cover \( \Lambda^+ \). For each of these attracting fixed points \( \alpha \), choose a word \( t \in k^{<\omega} \) such that \( \pi_{\mathcal{F}}(t) \) has attracting fixed point \( \alpha \). We let \( T_{\epsilon} \) denote the set of all such \( t \), and so we have
\[
\Lambda^+(\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle) \subseteq \bigcup_{t \in T_{\epsilon}} B(\alpha(\pi_{\mathcal{F}}(t)), \epsilon/2).
\]
Since \( T_{\epsilon} \) is finite, there is an open neighbourhood of \( \mathcal{F}, U \) say, such that for all \( \mathcal{G} \in U \) and all \( t \in T_{\epsilon} \) the Möbius transformation \( \pi_{\mathcal{G}}(t) \) is loxodromic, and the point \( \alpha(\pi_{\mathcal{G}}(t)) \) is no further than \( \epsilon/2 \) from \( \alpha(\pi_{\mathcal{F}}(t)) \). This is possible because the collection of loxodromic transformations is open in \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3) \), and the attracting fixed point of a loxodromic Möbius transformation \( f \) varies continuously as \( f \) does. It follows that \( B(\alpha(\pi_{\mathcal{F}}(t)), \epsilon/2) \subseteq B(\alpha(\pi_{\mathcal{G}}(t)), \epsilon) \) for all \( t \in T_{\epsilon} \). Now since \( B(\alpha(\pi_{\mathcal{G}}(t)), \epsilon) \subseteq (\Lambda^+(\langle \mathcal{G} \rangle))_{\epsilon} \) it follows that
\[
\Lambda^+(\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle) \subseteq (\Lambda^+(\langle \mathcal{G} \rangle))_{\epsilon}
\]
as required. \( \Box \)

The conclusion of the theorem can be regarded as ‘one half’ of continuity. For suppose the following statement were true: for all \( \epsilon > 0 \) there exists some neighbourhood \( U \) of \( \mathcal{F} \)
such that for all $G \in U$,
\begin{equation}
\Lambda^+ (\langle G \rangle) \subseteq (\Lambda^+ (\langle F \rangle))_c.
\end{equation}

When combined with the conclusion of the theorem, we could then infer that the map from $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)^k$ to the space of compact subsets of $S^2$ given by

\[ F \mapsto \Lambda^+ (\langle F \rangle) \]

is continuous. In fact condition (16) is false in general, as the example following Theorem 4.23 demonstrates.

### 3.3. Uniqueness of generating sets.

Let $S = \langle F \rangle$ where $F$ is a finite set. This subsection addresses the question of when $F$ is uniquely determined by $S$. We say $F$ is a minimal generating set if it has no redundant elements, that is, there are no elements we can remove from $F$ and still generate $S$ from the remaining elements. We first give sufficient conditions that ensure $S$ has a unique minimal generating set.

**Theorem 4.25.** Suppose $S$ is generated by the finite minimal generating set $F$, and has empty group part. Then $F$ is the unique minimal generating set if and only if the semigroup $fSf^{-1}$ does not meet $S^{-1}$ for all $f \in F$.

**Proof.** First suppose $S$ has two different minimal generating sets for $S$, say $F = \{f_1, \ldots, f_m\}$ and $G = \{g_1, \ldots, g_n\}$. Then some element of $F$, which we take to be $f_1$, does not lie in $G$. Hence we can write $f_1$ as a word $g_{i_1} \cdots g_{i_k}$ in $G$ with length $k \geq 2$. Now since each $g_{i_j}$ lies in $S$, we can substitute $g_{i_j}$ for some word in $F$. We now have written $f_1$ as a word in $F$, which we denote by $w$, and has length at least two. It is important to emphasise that no cancellations have been carried out; we regard words merely as sequences of letters, rather than sequences of Möbius transformations. If $f_1$ is the first or last letter of $w$, then $f_1$ can be cancelled from both sides leaving a nonempty word in $F$ equal to the identity, which contradicts that $I \notin S$. Yet if the letter $f_1$ does not feature as a letter in $w$, then $\{f_1, \ldots, f_m\}$ is not a minimal generating set, contrary to assumption. Hence we must have $f_1 = w_1 f_1 w_2$ where $w_1, w_2$ are nonempty words in $F$. Hence $w_1^{-1} = f_1 w_2 f_1^{-1}$ so that $f_1 S f_1^{-1}$ meets $S^{-1}$. 
For the other direction, suppose $fSf^{-1}$ meets $S^{-1}$ for some $f \in F$, say $f_1w_2f_1^{-1} = w_1^{-1}$ where $w_1$ and $w_2$ also lie in $S$. Hence $f_1 = w_1f_1w_2$. Then $\{w_1f_1, w_2, f_2, \ldots, f_m\}$ is a generating set that does not contain $f_1$. Hence any minimal generating set contained in $\{w_1f_1, w_2, f_2, \ldots, f_m\}$ is a minimal generating set that does not contain $f_1$. □

The proof of the next corollary sheds light on the property $fSf^{-1} \cap S^{-1} = \emptyset$ for all $f \in F$, and the corollary itself serves as further evidence that supposing a semigroup’s limit sets are disjoint is a strong property on semigroups.

**Corollary 4.26.** Suppose $S$ is generated by a finite minimal generating set $F$ that contains no elliptic transformations. If the limit sets of $S$ are disjoint then $F$ is a unique minimal generating set.

**Proof.** That $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free follows from Theorem 4.16, and so no element in $S$ is elliptic. If $F$ were not a unique generating set, then $fSf^{-1}$ would meet $S^{-1}$, say $fgf^{-1} = h^{-1}$. If $g$ is loxodromic then so is $h$, and moreover $f$ maps the axis of $g$ to the axis of $h$, sending $\alpha_g$ to $\beta_h$ and $\beta_g$ to $\alpha_h$. In particular the limit sets of $S$ meet contrary to assumption. If $g$ is parabolic then again, the limit sets of $S$ meet, contrary to assumption. As $g$ cannot be elliptic, $F$ must be a unique generating set after all. □

We do not know if this implication runs in the other direction; however we recall the example given in Section 3 of Chapter 2 which is consistent with the converse.

In [15, Section 5] the authors show that whenever $S$ is generated by a finite set $F$ acting on $\mathbb{B}^3$ such that each generator is not elliptic, then $F$ may be regarded as a contracting iterated function system acting on $\Lambda^\pm$. They do this by considering the finitely many connected components of $\Omega^-$ that meet $\Lambda^+$, and, as the limits sets are disjoint, these cover $\Lambda^+$. They then construct a metric derived from the hyperbolic metrics on each of these components. In general $S$ is not contracting on $\Lambda^+$ with respect to the chordal metric; however we can use Lemma 4.22 and ideas from the proof of Theorem 4.23 to find a finite set $F_M \subseteq S$ such that $S_M = \langle F_M \rangle$ has the same forward limit set as $S$, and $F_M$ is a contracting iterated function system with respect to the chordal metric, with limit set $\Lambda^+$. To do this, we recall that each loxodromic $f \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{B}^3)$ maps the interior of
$S^2 \setminus I^+(f)$ onto $I^-(f)$. Crucially each $f$ is contracting with respect to the chordal metric in the interior of $S^2 \setminus I^+(f)$. By Lemma 4.22 each $f \in \mathcal{F}_M$ has small isometric discs (of radius less than $1/\sinh[\frac{1}{2}M]$). Since $\beta_f \in I^+(f)$, the disc $I^+(f)$ is close to $\Lambda^-$; similarly $\alpha_f \in I^-(f)$. Hence for $M$ large enough, no $I^-(f)$ meets $I^-(g)$ for any $f, g \in \mathcal{F}_M$. It follows that $\mathcal{F}_M$ is contracting on

$$S^2 \setminus \bigcup_{f \in \mathcal{F}_M} I^+(f)$$

and has forward limit set $\Lambda^+(S)$.

Collecting results from this chapter, we list some further properties of the class of semigroup considered above.

**Theorem 4.27.** Let $S$ be a semigroup generated by a finite set of Möbius transformations that are not elliptic, and such that the limit sets of $S$ are disjoint. Then

(i) $S$ is discrete,

(ii) $S$ has empty group part,

(iii) both $\Lambda^+(S)$ and $\Lambda^-(S)$ vary continuously in a neighbourhood of $\mathcal{F}$,

(iv) $S$ has a unique minimal generating set, and

(v) every point in $\Lambda^+(S)$ is the limit point of some composition sequence, which converges conically.

**Proof.** By Theorem 4.16 $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free, hence by Theorem 4.21 $S$ is discrete. Now (iii) and (iv) follow by Theorem 4.23 and Corollary 4.26 respectively. Finally (v) follows by Theorem 4.18. □
CHAPTER 5

Self-maps of the disc

1. Introduction

This chapter is about composition sequences generated by finite subsets of the class $\text{M"{o}b}_1(\mathbb{D})$ of those Möbius transformations that map the unit disc strictly within itself. If $F_1, F_2, \ldots$ is such a sequence, then the discs

$$\mathbb{D} \supseteq F_1(\mathbb{D}) \supseteq F_2(\mathbb{D}) \supseteq \cdots$$

are nested, and the intersection $\bigcap F_n(\mathbb{D})$ is either a single point or a closed disc (by disc we mean a disc of positive radius in $\mathbb{C}$, using the chordal metric). In the first case we say that the composition sequence is of limit-point type, and in the second case we say that it is of limit-disc type. Composition sequences have been much studied within the literature on continued fractions (see, for example, [1] [4] [5] [27] [28]) – and the distinction between limit-point type and limit-disc type is of central importance. We will see that, for such composition sequences, limit-disc type really is quite special, and we find necessary and sufficient conditions for limit-disc type to occur. It is already known (see for example [27]) that every composition sequence of the type considered here converges ideally. Here we prove more, that every composition sequence has a strong convergence property. A composition sequence is of limit-point type exactly when the composition sequence converges uniformly on the unit disc. If the composition sequence is of limit-disc type, then the composition sequence merely converges locally uniformly (and not uniformly) on the unit disc.

To state our first result we introduce a new concept: a composition sequence $F_n$ generated by a subset of $\text{M"{o}b}_1(\mathbb{D})$ is said to be of limit-tangent type if all but a finite number of discs from the sequence $\mathbb{D} \supseteq F_1(\mathbb{D}) \supseteq F_2(\mathbb{D}) \supseteq \cdots$ share a single common boundary point.
Theorem 5.1. Let $F$ be a finite subset of $\text{M"ob}_1(\mathbb{D})$. Any composition sequence generated by $F$ of limit-disc type is of limit-tangent type.

That a composition sequence $F_n$ is of limit-tangent type implies that there is a point $p$ and a sequence $z_1, z_2, \ldots$ in $\partial \mathbb{D}$ such that $p = F_n(z_n)$ for sufficiently large values of $n$. It follows that $f_n(z_n) = z_{n-1}$ for large $n$. We know that $f_n(\mathbb{D}) \subsetneq \mathbb{D}$, so we deduce that $f_n(\mathbb{D})$ is internally tangent to $\mathbb{D}$ at the point $z_{n-1}$. Let us now choose any element $f$ of $\text{M"ob}_1(\mathbb{D})$: the disc $f(\mathbb{D})$ is either internally tangent to $\mathbb{D}$ at a unique point, or else it does not touch the boundary of $\mathbb{D}$. In the former case, we define $u_f$ and $v_f$ to be the unique points in $\partial \mathbb{D}$ such that $f(u_f) = v_f$, and in the latter case, we define $u_f = 0$ and $v_f = \infty$ (for reasons of convenience to emerge shortly). The preceding theorem tells us that in order for the sequence $F_n$ to be of limit-disc type, we need $u_{f_n} = v_{f_n}$ for sufficiently large values of $n$. How likely one is to find such a composition sequence is best illustrated by means of a directed graph $T(F)$, which we call the tangency graph of $F$, and which is defined as follows. The vertices of $T(F)$ are the elements of $F$. There is a directed edge from vertex $f$ to vertex $g$ if $u_f = v_g$. Clearly, any vertex $f$ for which $f(\mathbb{D})$ and $\mathbb{D}$ are not internally tangent is an isolated vertex.

Let us consider an example. One can easily check that a M"obius transformation $f(z) = a/(b + z)$, where $a \neq 0$, has the property that $f(\mathbb{D})$ is contained within and internally tangent to $\mathbb{D}$ if and only if $|b| = 1 + |a|$. Let

$$
g(z) = \frac{\frac{1}{2}}{\frac{1}{2} + z}, \quad h(z) = \frac{\frac{1}{2}}{-\frac{1}{2} + z}, \quad \text{and} \quad k(z) = \frac{-\frac{1}{2}}{-\frac{1}{2} + z}.
$$

Each of these maps satisfies the condition $|b| = 1 + |a|$. Observe that $g(-1) = 1$, $h(1) = -1$ and $k(1) = 1$, which implies that $u_g = -1$, $v_g = 1$, $u_h = 1$, and so forth. The tangency graph of $\{g, h, k\}$ is shown in Figure 5.1.

From the tangency graph we can see that a composition sequence $F_n = f_1 \cdots f_n$ generated by $\{g, h, k\}$ is not of limit-tangent type if and only if $(f_n, f_{n+1})$ is equal to either $(g, g)$, $(h, h)$, $(g, k)$, or $(k, h)$ for infinitely many positive integers $n$. 

We have shown that in order for a composition sequence $F_n$ to be of limit-disc type, the sequence of vertices $f_1, f_2, \ldots$ in the tangency graph must eventually form an infinite path. The converse fails though: not all infinite paths in the tangency graph correspond to sequences of limit-disc type. To determine which paths arise from composition sequences of limit-disc type, we need to look at the derivatives of the maps $f_n$ at tangency points. Let $\gamma_f = 1/|f'(u_f)|$, where $f \in \text{Möb}_1(\mathbb{D})$. The next theorem gives necessary and sufficient conditions for a composition sequence to be of limit-disc type.

**Theorem 5.2.** Let $\mathcal{F}$ be a finite subcollection of $\text{Möb}_1(\mathbb{D})$. A composition sequence $F_n = f_1 \cdots f_n$ generated by $\mathcal{F}$ is of limit-disc type if and only if:

(i) $u_{f_{n-1}} = v_{f_n}$ for all but finitely many positive integers $n$; and

(ii) $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \gamma_{f_1} \cdots \gamma_{f_n} < +\infty$.

For the example illustrated in Figure 5.1, one can check that $\gamma_g = \gamma_h = \gamma_k = 1/2$. It follows that any composition sequence generated by $\{g, h, k\}$ satisfies condition (ii) of Theorem 5.2, so such a sequence is of limit-disc type if and only if it is of limit-tangent type.

Next we turn to the following question: given a finite subcollection $\mathcal{F}$ of $\text{Möb}_1(\mathbb{D})$, how many of the composition sequences generated by $\mathcal{F}$ are of limit-disc type? Using the tangency graph we can formalise this question, and answer it, at least in part, using known techniques. More precisely, we will define a metric on the set $\mathcal{F}^\omega$ of all sequences
taking values in $F$. Each $x \in F^\omega$ gives rise to a composition sequence, the sequence with $n^{th}$ term $x(1) \cdots x(n)$.

Suppose $(X, d)$ is any metric space and $Y$ is a subset of $X$. We let $|Y|$ denote the diameter of $Y$. If $\{V_i\}$ is some finite or countable family of sets where $V_i \subseteq X$ and $\bigcup_i V_i$ contains $Y$, then we say the family $\{V_i\}$ is a cover of $Y$. If moreover $|V_i| \leq \delta$ for each $i$, then we say $\{V_i\}$ is a $\delta$-cover of $Y$. Recall that (see for example [13 Chapter 2]) if $s \geq 0$ then we define the quantity

$$
\mathcal{H}^s_\delta(Y) = \inf \left\{ \sum_i |U_i|^s \mid \{U_i\} \text{ is a } \delta\text{-cover of } Y \right\},
$$

and define the Hausdorff $s$-measure of $Y$ as

$$
\inf_{\delta \to 0} \mathcal{H}^s_\delta(Y).
$$

The Hausdorff dimension of $Y$ is defined by

$$
\dim(Y) = \inf \{ s \geq 0 \mid \mathcal{H}^s(Y) = 0 \} = \sup \{ s \geq 0 \mid \mathcal{H}^s(Y) = +\infty \}.
$$

We evaluate the Hausdorff dimension of $\Lambda_\circ(F)$, defined to be the set of elements in $F^\omega$ whose associated composition sequences are of limit-disc type. The value of the Hausdorff dimension depends on the metric we choose; a standard choice for a metric on the set of sequences from a finite alphabet (which we adopt) is as follows. Given sequences $x$ and $y$ in $F^\omega$, we define

$$
d(x, y) = \frac{1}{|F|^m}, \quad \text{where} \quad m = \min\{i \in \mathbb{N} \mid x(i) \neq y(i)\}.
$$

Then $(F^\omega, d)$ is a compact metric space.

A cycle in a directed graph is a sequence $x_0, \ldots, x_n$ of vertices in the graph such that $x_0 = x_n$ and there is a directed edge from $x_{i-1}$ to $x_i$, for $i = 1, \ldots, n$. Recall that the spectral radius of a square matrix is the largest modulus of the eigenvalues of the matrix. Let $\rho(F)$ denote the spectral radius of the adjacency matrix of $T(F)$. We can now state our first theorem on Hausdorff dimension.
Theorem 5.3. Let $\mathcal{F}$ be a finite subcollection of $\text{M"{o}b}_1(\mathbb{D})$, and suppose that $\gamma_f < 1$ for $f \in \mathcal{F}$. If $\mathcal{F}$ contains a cycle, then

\[
\dim \Lambda_\circ(\mathcal{F}) = \frac{\log \rho(\mathcal{F})}{\log |\mathcal{F}|},
\]

and otherwise $\dim \Lambda_\circ(\mathcal{F}) = 0$.

Returning again to the example illustrated in Figure 5.1, one can check that the spectral radius of the adjacency matrix of the tangency graph of $\mathcal{G} = \{g, h, k\}$ is $\frac{1}{2}(1 + \sqrt{5})$. Also, $\gamma_g, \gamma_h, \gamma_k < 1$. Therefore $\dim \Lambda_\circ(\mathcal{G}) = (\log(1 + \sqrt{5}) - \log 2)/\log 3$.

As we will see, Theorem 5.3 is a corollary of Theorem 5.2 and a well-known result on Hausdorff dimensions of paths in directed graphs. Also, because it assumes that condition (ii) from Theorem 5.2 is satisfied, it is really about the Hausdorff dimension of the set of composition sequences of limit-tangent type. In contrast, the next theorem determines $\dim \Lambda_\circ(\mathcal{F})$ under the assumption that condition (i) from Theorem 5.2 is satisfied.

Theorem 5.4. Let $\mathcal{F}$ be a finite subcollection of $\text{M"{o}b}_1(\mathbb{D})$, and suppose that $T(\mathcal{F})$ is the complete graph on $|\mathcal{F}|$ vertices. Then $\dim \Lambda_\circ(\mathcal{F}) = 0$ if $\gamma_f \geq 1$ for all $f \in \mathcal{F}$; $\dim \Lambda_\circ(\mathcal{F}) = 1$ if $\gamma_f < 1$ for all $f \in \mathcal{F}$; and otherwise

\[
\dim \Lambda_\circ(\mathcal{F}) = \frac{\log \left( \min \left\{ \sum_{f \in \mathcal{F}} \gamma_f^{-s} \mid s \geq 0 \right\} \right)}{\log |\mathcal{F}|}.
\]

The problem of finding $\dim \Lambda_\circ(\mathcal{F})$ for an arbitrary finite subset $\mathcal{F}$ of $\text{M"{o}b}_1(\mathbb{D})$ remains open.

So far we have focused on determining those composition sequences of limit-disc type, and we have ignored questions of convergence of sequences in the unit disc. In fact, it is known already that any composition sequence generated by a finite subset of $\text{M"{o}b}_1(\mathbb{D})$ converges locally uniformly in $\mathbb{D}$ to a constant (this follows, for example, from [27, Theorems 3.8 and 3.10]). Here we will prove some stronger theorems on convergence of composition sequences generated by a finite set.

Recall that a sequence of Möbius transformations $F_1, F_2, \ldots$ is called an escaping sequence if $\rho(\zeta, F_n(\zeta)) \to \infty$ as $n \to \infty$ for any choice of the point $\zeta$ in $\mathbb{H}^3$. We say that an escaping sequence $F_1, F_2, \ldots$ is of convergence type if $\sum \exp(-\rho(j, F_n(j))) < +\infty$. This terminology
is borrowed from the theory of Kleinian groups, and indeed, a sum of the type above will be familiar to Kleinian group theorists: it relates to the critical exponent of a Kleinian group, a connection that has been explored before in \[35\].

Our first theorem on convergence demonstrates that composition sequences generated by finite subsets of $\text{M"ob}_1(\mathbb{D})$ are of convergence type. In fact, it is more general than this, as it does not assume that the generating set is finite. Let $\text{rad}(D)$ denote the Euclidean radius of a Euclidean disc $D$.

**Theorem 5.5.** Let $f_1, f_2, \ldots$ be a sequence of Möbius transformations such that $f_n(\mathbb{D}) \subseteq \mathbb{D}$ and $\text{rad}(f_n(\mathbb{D})) < \delta$, for $n = 1, 2, \ldots$, where $\delta$ satisfies $0 < \delta < 1$. Then $F_n = f_1 \cdots f_n$ is of convergence type.

The convergence type condition is a strong convergence property. By placing further, relatively mild conditions on sequences of convergence type (such as assuming that the sequence is generated by a finite set) one can prove that the sequence converges ideally. What is more, if $F_n$ is of convergence type and converges ideally to a point $p$, then one can show that the set of points $z$ in $\mathbb{C}$ such that $F_n(z)$ does not converge to $p$ as $n \to \infty$ has Hausdorff dimension at most 1 (see \[35\] Corollary 3.5]). For composition sequences generated by a finite set and of the type that interest us, we have the following result.

**Theorem 5.6.** Let $F_n = f_1 \cdots f_n$ be a composition sequence generated by a finite subcollection $\mathcal{F}$ of $\text{M"ob}_1(\mathbb{D})$. Then $F_n$ converges ideally to a point $p$ in $\overline{\mathbb{D}}$. Furthermore, $F_n$ converges locally uniformly to $p$ on $\mathbb{D} \setminus X$, where

$$X = \{ u_f \in \partial \mathbb{D} \mid f_n = f \text{ for infinitely many integers } n \}.$$  

Theorem \[5.6\] is just a corollary of Theorem \[5.5\] and the part about converging ideally is known from other more general results (again, we refer the reader to \[27\] Theorems 3.8 and 3.10]). What we wish to emphasise is, first, the complete understanding of the dynamics that we have obtained, and, second, the interaction between the action of the transformations in hyperbolic space and on its boundary, which is illuminated in the proofs of the above pair of theorems. Although the results in this chapter are framed in terms of the unit disc, by conjugation they hold for any disc on the Riemann sphere. Indeed our results readily generalise to higher dimensions.
2. EVENTUALLY TANGENT SEQUENCES OF DISCS

In this section we prove Theorem 5.1. We make the elementary observation that if distinct discs $D$ and $E$ satisfy $D \subseteq E$, then they can have at most one point of tangency.

**Lemma 5.7.** Let $D_1 \subseteq D_2 \subseteq \cdots$ be a nested sequence of discs in the plane, no two of which are equal. The sequence is of limit-tangent type if and only if $D_n$ is tangent to $D_{n+2}$ for all but finitely many values of $n$.

**Proof.** Suppose that the sequence $D_1, D_2, \ldots$ is eventually tangent. Then there is a point $p$ in the plane and a positive integer $m$ such that $p \in \partial D_n$ when $n \geq m$. Therefore $D_n$ and $D_{n+2}$ share a common boundary point when $n \geq m$, and because the two discs are distinct and satisfy $D_{n+2} \subseteq D_n$, they must be tangent to one another. Conversely, suppose that there is a positive integer $m$ such that $D_n$ is tangent to $D_{n+2}$ when $n \geq m$. For any particular integer $k$, with $k \geq m$, let $p$ be the point of tangency of $D_k$ and $D_{k+2}$, and let $c$ and $r$ be the Euclidean centre and radius of $D_{k+1}$. As the discs $D_1, D_2, \ldots$ are nested, we see that first, $p \in \partial D_k$, so $|p - c| \geq r$, and second, $p \in \partial D_{k+2}$, so $|p - c| \leq r$. Therefore $|p - c| = r$, which implies that $D_k, D_{k+1}$ and $D_{k+2}$ have a (unique) common point of tangency. It follows that all the discs $D_n$ have a common point of tangency when $n \geq m$. \hfill \Box

We remark that the lemma remains true if we replace $D_n$ and $D_{n+2}$ with $D_n$ and $D_{n+q}$, for any positive integer $q > 1$, but is false for $q = 1$.

**Proof of Theorem 5.1.** We prove the contrapositive; that is, we prove that if $F_1(D) \subseteq F_2(D) \subseteq \cdots$ is not eventually tangent, then $F_1, F_2, \ldots$ is of limit-point type. Suppose then that $F_1(D) \subseteq F_2(D) \subseteq \cdots$ is not eventually tangent. By Lemma 5.7, there is an infinite sequence of positive integers $n_1 < n_2 < \cdots$, where $n_{i+1} > n_i + 1$ for each $i$, such that $F_{n_i+2}(D)$ is not tangent to $F_{n_i}(D)$ for each integer $n_i$. Equivalently, $f_{n_{i+1}}f_{n_i+2}(D)$ is not tangent to $D$ for each integer $n_i$. Let $K$ be the union of all the sets $fg(D)$, where $f, g \in F$, such that $fg(D)$ is not tangent to $D$. Since $F$ is finite, $K$ is a compact subset of $D$. 


Let us define $g_1 = f_1 \cdots f_{n_1}$ and $g_i = f_{n_i+1} \cdots f_{n_{i+1}}$ for $i = 2, 3, \ldots$. Then, for $i > 1$,

$$g_i(D) = f_{n_i+1} \cdots f_{n_{i+1}}(D) \subseteq f_{n_i+1}f_{n_{i+2}}(D) \subseteq K.$$  

Let $G_n = g_1 \cdots g_n$. Since each $g_i$ maps $D$ within a compact subset of $D$, [4, Theorem 4.6] tells us that $G_n$ converges uniformly on $D$ to a constant. That is, $G_n$ is of limit-point type. Since the sequence $G_1(D), G_2(D), \ldots$ is a subsequence of $F_1(D), F_2(D), \ldots$, we deduce that $F_n$ is also of limit-point type. □

3. Necessary and sufficient conditions for limit-disc type

We define the *chordal derivative* of a Möbius transformation $f$ by

$$f^\#(z) = \lim_{w \to z} \frac{\chi(f(z), f(w))}{\chi(z, w)}.$$  

The chordal derivative is related to the Euclidean derivative (see [7, Equation 2.1]) by the equation

$$f^\#(z) = \frac{(1 + |z|^2)|f'(z)|}{1 + |f(z)|^2}$$

for $z \neq f^{-1}(\infty), \infty$.

In the ball model, the orientation-preserving isometries of $B^3$ equipped with the Euclidean metric are exactly those Möbius transformations that fix $0$. In the upper half-space model, the orientation preserving isometries of $(\mathbb{C}, \chi)$ are exactly those Möbius transformations that fix $j$.

Let us define

$$\gamma_f = \frac{1}{f^\#(u_f)},$$

where $f \in \text{Möb}_1(D)$. In fact, $f^\#(u_f)$ happens to coincide with $|f'(u_f)|$ (the Euclidean derivative), but we use the chordal derivative because it is defined everywhere on $\mathbb{C}$, and could be used in a version of the next lemma in which $D$ is replaced by a half-plane (say).

In this section we prove Theorem 5.2. Let $K$ denote the open right half-plane of $\mathbb{C}$ and suppose that $h$ is a Möbius transformation that satisfies $h(K) \subseteq K$ and $h(\infty) = \infty$. Then $h(z) = az + b$, where $a > 0$ and $\text{Re}[b] \geq 0$. Moreover, $h(K) = K$ if and only if $\text{Re}[b] = 0$.  

Lemma 5.8. Suppose that \( h_n \) and \( H_n \) are sequences of Möbius transformations defined by
\[
h_n(z) = a_n z + b_n, \quad \text{where } a_n > 0 \text{ and } \Re[b_n] > 0,
\]
and \( H_n = h_1 \cdots h_n \). The sequence of nested discs \( H_1(\mathbb{K}), H_2(\mathbb{K}), \ldots \) is of limit-disc type if and only if
\[
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_1 \cdots a_{n-1} \Re[b_n] < +\infty.
\]
We assume that the expression \( a_1 \cdots a_{n-1} \) takes the value 1 when \( n = 1 \).

Proof. Observe that
\[
H_n(z) = a_1 \cdots a_n z + \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_1 \cdots a_{k-1} b_k.
\]
Therefore
\[
H_n(\mathbb{K}) = t_n + \mathbb{K}, \quad \text{where } t_n = \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_1 \cdots a_{k-1} \Re[b_k];
\]
the result follows immediately. \( \square \)

Whenever we have a composition sequence \( F_n = f_1 \cdots f_n \), it will be convenient to define \( F_0 \) equal to \( I \). We define \( \Pi \) to be the (hyperbolic) convex hull of \( \mathbb{D} \) in the upper half-space model, that is the smallest (hyperbolically) convex set in \( \mathbb{H}^3 \) containing each geodesic that lands at points in \( \mathbb{D} \).

Lemma 5.9. Suppose that \( f_n \) is a sequence of Möbius transformations from \( \text{Möb}_1(\mathbb{D}) \), and \( z_0, z_1, \ldots \) is sequence of points from \( \partial \mathbb{D} \) such that \( f_n(z_n) = z_{n-1} \) for each positive integer \( n \). Let \( F_n = f_1 \cdots f_n \). Then the nested sequence of discs \( F_1(\mathbb{D}), F_2(\mathbb{D}), \ldots \) is of limit-disc type if and only if
\[
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sinh \rho([1, f_n(\Pi)])}{F^\#_{n-1}(z_{n-1})} < +\infty.
\]

Proof. The discs \( \mathbb{D} \) and \( \mathbb{K} \) both have chordal radius 1, so there is a chordal isometry \( \phi_n \) that maps \( \mathbb{D} \) to \( \mathbb{K} \) and maps \( z_n \) to \( \infty \), for \( n = 0, 1, \ldots \). Let \( h_n = \phi_{n-1} f_n \phi_n^{-1} \) and \( H_n = h_1 \cdots h_n \). Then \( H_n(\mathbb{K}) = \phi_0 F_n(\mathbb{D}) \), so \( F_1(\mathbb{D}), F_2(\mathbb{D}), \ldots \) is of limit-disc type if and only if \( H_1(\mathbb{K}), H_2(\mathbb{K}), \ldots \) is of limit-disc type. Observe that \( h_n(\infty) = \infty \) and \( h_n \in \text{Möb}_1(\mathbb{K}) \). Therefore we can write \( h_n(z) = a_n z + b_n \), where \( a_n > 0 \) and \( \Re[b_n] > 0 \). By applying the chain rule, and remembering that the maps \( \phi_n \) are chordal isometries, we see that
\[
F_n^\#(z_n) = H_n^\#(\infty) = \frac{1}{a_1 \cdots a_n}.
\]
Next, since $h_n(K) = b_n + K$, a simple calculation in hyperbolic geometry shows that

$$\sinh \rho(j, h_n(\Sigma)) = \text{Re}[b_n],$$

where $\Sigma$ is the hyperbolic plane with ideal boundary $\partial K$. Observe that

$$\rho(j, f_n(\Pi)) = \rho(\phi_{n-1}(j), \phi_{n-1}f_n\phi_n^{-1}(\Sigma)) = \rho(j, h_n(\Sigma)),$$

so $\sinh \rho(j, f_n(\Pi)) = \text{Re}[b_n]$. To conclude, we deduce from Lemma 5.8 that $F_1(\mathbb{D}), F_2(\mathbb{D}), \ldots$ is of limit-disc type if and only if

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sinh \rho(j, f_n(\Pi))}{F_{n-1}^\#(z_{n-1})} < +\infty,$$

as required.

\[\Box\]

**Proof of Theorem 5.2** Statement (i) of Theorem 5.2 is equivalent to the assertion that the sequence of discs $F_1(\mathbb{D}) \subseteq F_2(\mathbb{D}) \subseteq \cdots$ is eventually tangent. Therefore Theorem 5.1 tells us that if $F_1, F_2, \ldots$ is of limit-disc type, then statement (i) holds. Thus, we have only to show that, on the assumption that statement (i) holds, $F_1, F_2, \ldots$ is of limit-disc type if and only if statement (ii) holds.

Let $z_n = u_{f_n}$, for $n = 1, 2, \ldots$, and $z_0 = v_{f_1}$. Then

$$f_n(z_n) = f_n(u_{f_n}) = v_{f_n} = u_{f_{n-1}} = z_{n-1},$$

for sufficently large values of $n$. In particular, $z_k = f_{k+1} \cdots f_n(z_n)$, for $k = 1, \ldots, n - 1$.

Also, by the chain rule,

$$\gamma_1 \cdots \gamma_n = \frac{1}{f_1^\#(z_1) \cdots f_n^\#(z_n)} = \frac{1}{F_n^\#(z_n)}.$$\[1\]

Since $\mathcal{F}$ is finite, there is a positive constant $k$ such that

$$\frac{1}{k} < \sinh \rho(j, f(\Pi)) < k,$$

for any map $f$ in $\mathcal{F}$. It follows that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \gamma_{f_1} \cdots \gamma_{f_n} < +\infty \quad \text{if and only if} \quad \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sinh \rho(j, f_n(\Pi))}{F^\#_{n-1}(z_{n-1})} < +\infty.$$\[2\]

It follows then, from Lemma 5.9, that $F_1, F_2, \ldots$ is of limit-disc type if and only if statement (ii) holds, and this completes the proof. \[\Box\]
4. Hausdorff dimension of the set of composition sequences of limit-disc type

In this section we prove Theorem 5.3. First we need some terminology, and a result [16] Corollary 2.9], which we state here, in our notation.

**Theorem 5.10.** Let $G$ be a directed graph with vertices $\{0, \ldots, b-1\}$ that contains a cycle. Then the Hausdorff dimension of the elements in $\{0, \ldots, b-1\}^\omega$ that are paths in $G$ is given by

$$\frac{\log \rho(G)}{\log b},$$

where $\rho(G)$ is the spectral radius of $G$.

We say $x \in \mathcal{F}^\omega$ is a path in $T(\mathcal{F})$ if for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$ there is a directed edge in $T(\mathcal{F})$ from $x(n)$ to $x(n+1)$. We say $x \in \mathcal{F}^\omega$ is eventually a path in $T(\mathcal{F})$ if for some $m \in \mathbb{N}$ the sequence with $n^{th}$ term $x(n+m)$ is a path in $T(\mathcal{F})$. We can now deduce Theorem 5.3.

**Proof of Theorem 5.3.** By Theorem 5.2 a composition sequence is of limit-disc type if and only if the associated element in $\mathcal{F}^\omega$ is eventually a path in the tangency graph. That is, $\Lambda_o(\mathcal{F})$ is exactly the set of those elements in $\mathcal{F}^\omega$ that are eventually a path in $T(\mathcal{F})$. If $T(\mathcal{F})$ contains no cycles then clearly $\Lambda_o(\mathcal{F})$ is empty, and so has Hausdorff dimension 0. Otherwise we appeal to Theorem 5.10 and infer that the set of elements in $\mathcal{F}^\omega$ that are paths in $T(\mathcal{F})$ has Hausdorff dimension $\log \rho(\mathcal{F})/\log b$. Hausdorff dimension enjoys a countable stability property, that is for any sequence of sets $X_n \subseteq \mathcal{F}^\omega$, we have $\dim \bigcup_{n=1}^\infty X_n = \sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \dim X_n$. As $\mathcal{F}$ is finite, by this countable stability property it follows that the collection of elements in $\mathcal{F}^\omega$ that are eventually paths in $T(\mathcal{F})$ also has Hausdorff dimension $\log \rho(\mathcal{F})/\log b$. □

5. Complete tangency graph

In this section we turn to the proof of Theorem 5.4. Recall the metric $d$ on $\mathcal{F}^\omega$ defined by $d(x, y) = 1/|\mathcal{F}|^m$ where $m = \min\{i \in \mathbb{N} \mid x(i) \neq y(i)\}$. So far we have worked with Hausdorff dimensions of subsets of the metric space $(\mathcal{F}^\omega, d)$. By associating composition sequences generated by $\mathcal{F}$ with sequences in $\mathcal{F}^\omega$, we were able to assign a Hausdorff dimension to the collection of composition sequences that are of limit-disc type. In this section we represent composition sequences not by elements in $\mathcal{F}^\omega$, but by points in $[0, 1]$. 
5. SELF-MAPS OF THE DISC

via their base $|\mathcal{F}|$-expansion. We think of composition sequences as points in the metric space $[0, 1]$ endowed with the Euclidean metric. In doing so we give rise to a different notion of Hausdorff dimension on sets of composition sequences. In fact, the two notions of Hausdorff dimension coincide. A form of this statement can be deduced from [14, Theorem 5.1], however for convenience we state and prove the result here, in our notation.

Let $b = |\mathcal{F}|$ and choose an enumeration $\{f_0, \ldots, f_{b-1}\}$ of $\mathcal{F}$. We now regard sequences in $\mathcal{F}$ as sequences in $\{0, \ldots, b-1\}$. Define $I_1 \subseteq [0, 1]$ as the set of points whose base $b$-expansion is not eventually equal to 0, or eventually equal to $b-1$. Let $B_1 \subseteq \{0, \ldots, b-1\}^\omega$ denote those sequences that are not eventually equal to 0, or eventually equal to $b-1$. Then when the projection $\pi : \{0, \ldots, b-1\}^\omega \to [0, 1]$ given by $\pi(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} x(j) b^{-j}$ is restricted to $B_1$, we obtain a bijection from $B_1$ onto $I_1$. Given any $X \subseteq [0, 1]$ let $I^s(X)$ be the Hausdorff $s$-measure of $X$ with respect to the Euclidean metric on $[0, 1]$. Similarly, for $Y \subseteq \{0, \ldots, b-1\}^\omega$ let $B^s(Y)$ be the Hausdorff $s$-measure of $Y$ induced by the metric space $\left(\{0, \ldots, b-1\}^\omega, d\right)$. The quantities $I^s(I_1)$ and $B^s(B_1)$ are defined in the obvious way. Since both $[0, 1] \setminus I_1$ and $\{0, \ldots, b-1\}^\omega \setminus B_1$ are countable, $I^s(I_1) = B^s(B_1) = 1$ for all $s > 0$.

**Lemma 5.11.** For any $X \subseteq [0, 1]$ and $s > 0$ we have that $I^s(X) = 0$ if and only if $B^s(\pi^{-1}(X)) = 0$. Consequently the Hausdorff dimensions of $X$ and $\pi^{-1}(X)$ are equal.

**Proof.** Suppose $X \subseteq I_1$ and choose any $s > 0$. Let us write $Y = \pi^{-1}(X)$. If $x, y \in B$ are such that $d(x, y) = b^{-m}$, then $\pi(x)$ and $\pi(y)$ lie in the same $b$-adic interval of level $m-1$. Hence $|\pi(x) - \pi(y)| \leq b^{-m+1} = bd(x, y)$, and so $\pi$ is a Lipschitz map. Hence by [14, Lemma 1.8] there exists $c > 0$ such that $I^s(\pi(Y)) \leq c^s B^s(Y)$ for all $Y \subseteq B_1$. In the other direction, suppose $Y \subseteq B_1$ and choose $\delta > 0$ and $\epsilon > 0$. Suppose $\{V_i\}$ is a family where each $V_i \subseteq I_1$, the family forms a $\delta$-cover of $\pi(Y)$, and satisfies

$$
\sum_i |V_i|^s \leq I^s_\delta(\pi(Y)) + \epsilon.
$$

For each $i$ let $k_i$ be the unique positive integer such that

$$
b^{-k_i-1} \leq |V_i| < b^{-k_i}.
$$
Each $V_i$ meets at most two $b$-adic intervals of level $k_i$. If $V_i$ meets two such intervals we denote them by $V_{i0}$ and $V_{i1}$. Otherwise $V_i$ meets one such interval, which we denote by $V_{i0}$, and let $V_{i1} = \emptyset$. Note that

$$|\pi^{-1}(V_{ij})| \leq b^{-k_i-1}$$

so that

$$(17) \quad |\pi^{-1}(V_{ij})| \leq |V_i|.$$ 

Since $\{V_{ij}\}$ is a cover of $\pi(Y)$, the family $\{\pi^{-1}(V_{ij})\}$ is a cover of $Y$, and by (17) it is a $\delta$-cover. Since $|V_{ij}| \leq b^{-k_i} \leq b|V_i|$ it follows that

$$B^s_\delta(Y) \leq \sum_{i,j} |\pi^{-1}(V_{ij})|^s \leq \sum_{i,j} |V_{ij}|^s \leq 2b^s \sum_i |V_i|^s \leq 2b^s (I^s_\delta(\pi(Y)) + \epsilon).$$

Letting $\epsilon \to 0$ we obtain $B^s_\delta(Y) \leq 2b^s I^s_\delta(\pi(Y))$. Hence

$$B^s_\delta(Y) \leq 2b^s I^s_\delta(\pi(Y)) \leq 2b^s I^s(\pi(Y)),$$

and letting $\delta \to 0$ yields $B^s(Y) \leq 2b^s I^s(\pi(Y))$.

Hence we have shown that

$$B^s(Y) \leq 2b^s I^s(\pi(Y)) \leq 2b^s c^s B^s(Y)$$

for all $Y \subseteq B_1$. Since $B \setminus B_1$ is countable, the above also holds for any $Y \subseteq B$. It follows that for any $X \subseteq [0,1]$ we have $B^s(\pi^{-1}(X)) = 0$ if and only if $I^s(X) = 0$. $\square$

Above, we began by choosing an enumeration of $F$ in order to convert sequences in $F$ into sequences in $\{0,1,\ldots,b-1\}$. Because of the nature of the metric $d$ on $\{0,\ldots,b-1\}$, the Hausdorff dimension of subsets of $\{0,\ldots,b-1\}$ is invariant under permutations of $\{0,1,\ldots,b-1\}$. It follows that the Hausdorff dimension we defined on composition sequences via the interval $[0,1]$ is also independent of the choice of enumeration of $F$.  

---

5. COMPLETE TANGENCY GRAPH

135
We now work towards a proof of Theorem 5.4. Suppose \( \{\gamma_0, \ldots, \gamma_{b-1}\} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^+ \). For each \( x \in \{0, \ldots, b-1\}^\omega \) and \( i = 0, 1, \ldots, b-1 \) we write
\[
N_i(x, n) = |\{j \in \{1, \ldots, n\} \mid x(j) = i\}|.
\]
In light of the above lemma and Theorem 5.2 our goal in this section is to prove the following.

**Theorem 5.12.** Suppose \( \{\gamma_0, \ldots, \gamma_{b-1}\} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^+ \) is such that \( \gamma_i > 1 \) and \( \gamma_j < 1 \) for some \( i, j \). Let \( X \) be the \( \pi \)-image of those \( x \in \{0, \ldots, b-1\}^\omega \) such that the series
\[
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \prod_{j=1}^{n} \gamma_{x(j)}
\]
converges. Then
\[
\dim X = \inf_{s > 0} \log \left( \sum_{i=0}^{b-1} \gamma_i^{-s} \right) / \log b.
\]
It is easy to find \( \dim X \) if \( \gamma_i \leq 1 \) for all \( i \), or if \( \gamma_i \geq 1 \) for all \( i \). For example in the latter case, \( X \) is empty and \( \dim X = 0 \). Hence to prove Theorem 5.4 it suffices to prove Theorem 5.12. Given any \( x \in \{0, \ldots, b-1\}^\omega \) we define
\[
\log \eta_n(x) = \sum_{i=0}^{b-1} \frac{N_i(x, n)}{n} \log \gamma_i,
\]
and relate the convergence of the series
\[
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \prod_{j=1}^{n} \gamma_{x(j)}
\]
to the sequence \( \eta_n(x) \).

**Lemma 5.13.** If \( \limsup_{n \to \infty} \log \eta_n(x) < 0 \) then the series
\[
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \prod_{j=1}^{n} \gamma_{x(j)}
\]
converges, while, if \( \limsup_{n \to \infty} \log \eta_n(x) > 0 \), then the series diverges.
Proof. This result is no more than an application of the \( n \)th root test for converging series. It follows from the test that

\[
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \prod_{j=1}^{n} \gamma_{x(j)}
\]

converges if \( \limsup_{n \to \infty} \left( \prod_{j=1}^{n} \gamma_{x(j)} \right)^{1/n} < 1 \), but diverges if \( \limsup_{n \to \infty} \left( \prod_{j=1}^{n} \gamma_{x(j)} \right)^{1/n} > 1 \). Noting that the logarithm function is increasing, a straightforward computation shows that

\[
\log \left( \frac{1}{n} \limsup_{n \to \infty} \prod_{j=1}^{n} \gamma_{x(j)} \right) = \limsup_{n \to \infty} \log \eta_n(x)
\]

and so the result follows.

For \( b = 1, 2, \ldots \) and \( x \in [0,1] \) we write \( I_n(x) \) as the \( n \)th level \( b \)-adic half open interval containing \( x \). We shall use the following result, which is also known as Billingsley’s lemma, which can be found in [13, Proposition 2.3].

Lemma 5.14. Suppose \( A \subseteq [0,1] \) is a Borel set and let \( \mu \) be a Borel measure on \([0,1] \) such that \( \mu([0,1]) < \infty \). If for all \( x \in A \) we have

\[
\liminf_{n \to \infty} \frac{\log \mu(I_n(x))}{\log |I_n(x)|} \leq s,
\]

then \( \dim A \leq s \). If \( \mu(A) > 0 \) and for all \( x \in A \) we have

\[
t \leq \liminf_{n \to \infty} \frac{\log \mu(I_n(x))}{\log |I_n(x)|},
\]

then \( t \leq \dim A \).

We say \( p = (p_0, \ldots, p_{b-1}) \) is a probability vector if \( 0 \leq p_i \leq 1 \) for each \( i \), and \( \sum_i p_i = 1 \). For \( i, j \in \{0,1,\ldots,b-1\} \) we define

\[
\delta_{i,j} = \begin{cases} 
1 & \text{if } i = j \\
0 & \text{if } i \neq j.
\end{cases}
\]

Using Lemma 5.14, the following result [8, Equation 14.4] can be shown.
Lemma 5.15. Let $p = (p_0, \ldots, p_{b-1})$ be a probability vector. Given $x \in [0, 1]$ let $x(j)$ denote the $j$-th digit in the $b$-adic expansion of $x$. Let $F_p$ be the set of $x \in [0, 1]$ such that for each $i = 0, \ldots, b - 1$

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} \delta_{x(j), i} = p_i.$$

Then

$$\dim F_p = - \sum_i p_i \log p_i \log b.$$

To prove Theorem 5.12 we first establish some properties of the function given by

$$g(s) = \log \sum_{i=0}^{b-1} \gamma_i^{-s}$$
on $\mathbb{R}$. For convenience we define $f(s) = -g'(s)$.

Lemma 5.16. Suppose that $\{\gamma_0, \ldots \gamma_{b-1}\} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^+$ satisfy the assumptions of Theorem 5.12. Then

$$\lim_{s \to +\infty} g(s) = \lim_{s \to -\infty} g(s) = +\infty,$$

and $g$ attains a unique global minimum in $\mathbb{R}$. The function $f$ is strictly decreasing and has exactly one zero at the global minimum of $g$.

Proof. The hypotheses on $\{\gamma_0, \ldots \gamma_{b-1}\}$ imply that $g(s) \to \infty$ as $|s| \to \infty$ does, and as $g$ is continuous, $\{g(s) \mid s \in \mathbb{R}\}$ attains a minimum value $g(s_0)$ at some local minimum $s_0$ of $g$. Differentiating $g$ gives

$$f(s) = \frac{\sum_i \gamma_i^{-s} \log \gamma_i}{\sum_i \gamma_i^{-s}}.$$

Note that as $s \to -\infty$ then for $\gamma > 1$, $\gamma^{-s} \log \gamma \to \infty$ while if $\gamma < 1$ then $\gamma^{-s} \log \gamma \to 0$. Similarly as $s \to +\infty$ then for $\gamma > 1$, $\gamma^{-s} \log \gamma \to 0$ while if $\gamma < 1$ then $\gamma^{-s} \log \gamma \to -\infty$. As the denominator of $f$ is always positive, it follows that $f(s)$ takes negative values near $+\infty$ and positive values near $-\infty$, and in particular $f(s)$ has at least one zero. A computation shows that

$$f'(s) = \frac{1}{(\sum_i \gamma_i^{-s})^2} \left[ \left( \sum_i (\log \gamma_i) \gamma_i^{-s} \right)^2 - \left( \sum_i (\log \gamma_i) \gamma_i^{-s} \right) \left( \sum_i \gamma_i^{-s} \right) \right]$$

$$= f(s)^2 - \frac{\sum_i \gamma_i^{-s} (\log \gamma_i)^2}{\sum_i \gamma_i^{-s}}.$$
so that \( f'(s) < 0 \) if \( f(s) = 0 \); that is, \( f \) is decreasing at its zeros. In fact \( f \) is a strictly decreasing function on \( \mathbb{R} \): an application of the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality yields

\[
\left( \sum_i (\log \gamma_i) \gamma_i^{-s} \right)^2 = \left( \sum_i (\gamma_i^{-s/2} \log \gamma_i)(\gamma_i^{-s/2}) \right)^2 \leq \left( \sum_i (\log \gamma_i)^2 \gamma_i^{-s} \right) \left( \sum_i \gamma_i^{-s} \right).
\]

Moreover the inequality is strict, for otherwise \( (\gamma_0^{-s/2}, \ldots, \gamma_{b-1}^{-s/2}) \) is a multiple of \( (\gamma_0^{-s/2} \log \gamma_0, \ldots, \gamma_{b-1}^{-s/2} \log \gamma_{b-1}) \), which implies that \( \log \gamma_i \) takes the same value over \( i = 0, \ldots, b - 1 \), contrary to our assumption on the \( \gamma_i \). Since \( f \) is continuous it must have exactly one zero, so that \( g(s) \) has exactly one local extremum in \( \mathbb{R} \), which is hence also a global minimum. \( \square \)

Note that Lemma 5.16 says that the infimum of Theorem 5.12 is either attained as a minimum for some \( s > 0 \), or is equal to \( g(0) = \log b \), in which case \( \dim(X) = 1 \).

Let us denote by \( s_0 \) the unique real number where \( g \) attains its minimum. We write
\[
X_{<0} = \left\{ \pi(x) \mid x \in \{0, \ldots, b-1\}^\omega \setminus E_2 \text{ and } \limsup_{n \to \infty} \log \eta_n(x) < 0 \right\},
\]
and similarly define the set \( X_{\leq 0} \), so that by Lemma 5.13 we have the inclusion
\[
X_{<0} \subseteq X \subseteq X_{\leq 0}.
\]

We can now prove Theorem 5.12.

**Proof of Theorem 5.12.** For \( s \in \mathbb{R} \) we define \( \mu_s \) to be the probability measure generated by the probability vector

\[
\frac{1}{\sum_i \gamma_i^{-s}} \left( \gamma_0^{-s}, \ldots, \gamma_{b-1}^{-s} \right).
\]

Now, for \( x \in \{0, \ldots, b-1\}^\omega \), let \( I_n(x) \) denote the \( n \)-level \( b \)-adic interval containing \( \pi(x) \). It follows that

\[
\frac{\log \mu_s(I_n(x))}{\log |I_n(x)|} = \frac{\log \left( (\sum_i \gamma_i^{-s})^{-n} \prod_i \gamma_i^{-s N_i(x,n)} \right)}{\log b^{-n}} = \frac{-n \log (\sum_i \gamma_i^{-s}) - s \sum_i N_i(x,n) \log \gamma_i}{-n \log b};
\]

hence
\[
\liminf_{n \to \infty} \frac{\log \mu_s(I_n(x))}{\log |I_n(x)|} = \frac{\log (\sum_i \gamma_i^{-s})}{\log b} + \liminf_{n \to \infty} \frac{s}{\log b} \log \eta_n(x).
\]
We now show that \( \dim(X) \geq \inf_{s > 0} \log \left( \sum_i \frac{\gamma_i^{-s}}{\log b} \right) \). Let \( F_s \) denote the set of \( x \in [0, 1] \) such that for each \( j = 0, \ldots, b - 1 \)
\[
\lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{N_j(x, n)}{n} = \frac{\gamma_j^{-s}}{\sum_i \gamma_i^{-s}}.
\]
If \( x \in F_s \) then
\[
\lim_{n \to \infty} \log \eta_n(x) = \frac{\sum_i \gamma_i^{-s} \log \gamma_i}{\sum_i \gamma_i^{-s}} = f(s).
\]
By Lemma 5.16 we have \( f(s_0 + \epsilon) < 0 \) and so \( F_{s_0 + \epsilon} \subseteq X \) by Lemma 5.13. Now applying Lemma 5.15 gives
\[
\dim(F_s) = \frac{g(s)}{\log b} + \frac{s f(s)}{\log b};
\]
for all \( \epsilon > 0 \) we have
\[
\dim(X) \geq \dim(F_{s_0 + \epsilon}) = \frac{g(s_0 + \epsilon) + (s_0 + \epsilon) f(s_0 + \epsilon)}{\log b}.
\]
If \( s_0 < 0 \) then set \( \epsilon = -s_0 \) to obtain \( \dim(X) \geq g(0)/\log(b) = 1 \), so that \( \dim(X) = 1 \).

Otherwise \( s_0 \geq 0 \), and since \( f(s_0 + \epsilon) \to 0 \) as \( \epsilon \to 0 \), we obtain the bound
\[
\dim(X) \geq \frac{g(s_0)}{\log b}.
\]
Finally we give the upper bound on \( \dim(X) \). We know that \( \dim(X) = 1 \) if \( s_0 < 0 \), so we need only consider \( s_0 \geq 0 \). Now if \( s \geq 0 \) and \( x \in X_{\leq 0} \) then equation (21) gives
\[
\liminf_{n \to \infty} \frac{\log \mu_s(I_n(x))}{\log |I_n(x)|} = \frac{g(s)}{\log b} + \frac{s}{\log b} \liminf_{n \to \infty} \log \eta_n(x)
\]
\[
\leq \frac{g(s)}{\log b} + \frac{s}{\log b} \limsup_{n \to \infty} \log \eta_n(x)
\]
\[
\leq \frac{g(s)}{\log b}.
\]
Now by Lemma 5.14 and by the set inclusion (20) we have
\[
\dim(X) \leq \dim(X_{\leq 0}) \leq \frac{g(s)}{\log b}.
\]
Since \( g \) attains its minimum at \( s_0 \geq 0 \) we obtain the bound
\[
\dim(X) \leq \inf_{s > 0} \frac{g(s_0)}{\log b}.
\]
Amalgamating our findings, if \( s_0 \geq 0 \) then we have \( \dim(X) = g(s_0)/\log b \), while if \( s_0 \leq 0 \), then \( \dim(X) = g(0)/\log b = 1 \).
6. Convergence of composition sequences

So far in this chapter we have concerned ourselves with the dichotomy between limit-point and limit-disc type. We now turn to the issue of convergence, and in particular we prove Theorem 5.5. Recall that the height of a point \( z + tj \in \mathbb{H}^3 \) is denoted by \( \text{ht}[z + tj] = t \).

**Lemma 5.17.** Let \( U \) and \( V \) be distinct Euclidean discs with centres \( u \) and \( v \), and radii \( r \) and \( s \), in that order. Suppose that \( V \subseteq U \) and

\[
\frac{r}{s} < \min\left\{ 2, 1 + \frac{1}{8} \sinh \rho(z, \Pi(V)) \right\},
\]

for some point \( z \) in \( \Pi(U) \). Let \( w \) be the point in \( \Pi(V) \) with \( \text{ht}[w] = \text{ht}[z] \) that is closest in Euclidean distance to \( z \). Then

\[
|z - w| < 2(r - s).
\]

**Proof.** Using a standard formula for the hyperbolic metric (see, for example, Section 7.20]) we have

\[
\sinh \rho(z, \Pi(V)) = \frac{|z - v|^2 - s^2}{2hs},
\]

where \( h = \text{ht}[z] \). As \( V \subseteq U \), we see that \( |u - v| + s \leq r \). Hence

\[
|z - v|^2 - s^2 \leq (|z - u| + |u - v|)^2 - s^2 \leq (2r - s)^2 - s^2 = 4r(r - s).
\]

Therefore, using (22), we obtain

\[
\sinh \rho(z, \Pi(V)) \leq \frac{2r(r - s)}{hs} = \frac{2r}{h} \left( \frac{r}{s} - 1 \right) < \frac{r}{4h} \sinh \rho(z, \Pi(V)).
\]

It follows that \( h < r/4 < s/2 \).

Now, let \( \Sigma \) denote the Euclidean plane in \( \mathbb{H}^3 \) with height \( h \). Let \( U_0 \) and \( V_0 \) denote the Euclidean discs in \( \Sigma \) with centres \( u + hj \) and \( v + hj \), and radii \( \sqrt{r^2 - h^2} \) and \( \sqrt{s^2 - h^2} \), in that order. Observe that \( V_0 \subseteq U_0 \) and \( z \in U_0 \) and \( w \in V_0 \). Using elementary Euclidean geometry, we can see that

\[
|z - w| < 2\sqrt{r^2 - h^2} - 2\sqrt{s^2 - h^2}.
\]
But $h < s/2$ and $h < r/2$, so
\[
2\sqrt{r^2 - h^2} - 2\sqrt{s^2 - h^2} = \frac{2(r^2 - s^2)}{\sqrt{r^2 - h^2} + \sqrt{s^2 - h^2}} < \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}(r - s).
\]
Therefore $|z - w| < 2(r - s)$, as required. \(\square\)

**Proof of Theorem 5.5.** Let $\eta = \min \left\{2, 1 + \frac{1}{8} \sinh \delta\right\}$ and let $r_n$ be the Euclidean radius of $F_n(\mathcal{D})$ (with $r_0 = 1$). Now define
\[
A = \left\{ n \in \mathbb{N} \left| \frac{r_{n-1}}{r_n} < \eta \right. \right\} \text{ and } B = \left\{ n \in \mathbb{N} \left| \frac{r_{n-1}}{r_n} \geq \eta \right. \right\}.
\]
Suppose that $n \in A$. Observe that $\rho(F_{n-1}(j), F_n(\Pi)) = \rho(j, f_n(\Pi)) > \delta$, so
\[
\frac{r_{n-1}}{r_n} < \eta < \min \left\{2, 1 + \frac{1}{8} \sinh \rho(F_{n-1}(j), F_n(\Pi))\right\}.
\]
Let $w_n$ be the point in $F_n(\Pi)$ with $ht[w_n] = ht[F_{n-1}(j)]$ that is closest in Euclidean distance to $F_{n-1}(j)$. Lemma 5.17 tells us that
\[
|F_{n-1}(j) - w_n| \leq 2(r_{n-1} - r_n).
\]
Now, using a basic estimate of hyperbolic distance, we find that
\[
\delta ht[F_{n-1}(j)] \leq \rho(F_{n-1}(j), F_n(\Pi))ht[F_{n-1}(j)] \leq \rho(F_{n-1}(j), w_n)ht[F_{n-1}(j)] \leq |F_{n-1}(j) - w_n|.
\]
Hence $\delta ht[F_{n-1}(j)] < 2(r_{n-1} - r_n)$, so
\[
\sum_{n \in A} ht[F_{n-1}(j)] < +\infty.
\]
Next, let $n_1 < n_2 < \ldots$ be the elements of $B$. As $r_{n_k}/r_{n_{k-1}} \leq 1/\eta$, we see that $r_{n_k} \leq 1/\eta^k$. Therefore
\[
ht[F_{n_k-1}(j)] \leq r_{n_k-1} \leq r_{n_{k-1}} \leq \frac{1}{\eta^k},
\]
so
\[
\sum_{n \in B} ht[F_{n-1}(j)] < +\infty.
\]
Observe that $-\log ht[F_{n-1}(j)] \leq \rho(j, F_{n-1}(j))$, from which it follows that $\exp[-\rho(j, F_{n-1}(j))] \leq ht[F_{n-1}(j)]$. We have just seen that
\[
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} ht[F_{n-1}(j)] < +\infty,
\]
and hence we conclude that $F_1, F_2, \ldots$ is of convergence type. \(\square\)
Proof of Theorem 5.6. Let us begin by proving that \( F_n \) converges ideally. In this part of the proof it is convenient to switch to the unit ball model of hyperbolic space. In this model the distinguished point \( 0 \) replaces the point \( j \) in \( \mathbb{H}^3 \). Two standard formulas for the hyperbolic metric in \( \mathbb{B}^3 \) are

\[
\rho(0, z) = \log \frac{1 + |z|}{1 - |z|} \quad \text{and} \quad \sinh \frac{1}{2} \rho(z, w) = \frac{|z - w|}{\sqrt{(1 - |z|^2)(1 - |w|^2)}}.
\]

From the first standard formula we see that \( 1 - |z| = (1 + |z|)e^{-\rho(0, z)} \). Substituting this equation into the second standard formula, and noting that \( 1 + |z| \leq 2 \), we obtain

\[
|z - w| = \sqrt{(1 - |z|^2)(1 - |w|^2)} \sinh \frac{1}{2} \rho(z, w) \leq 2(e^{-\rho(0, z)} + e^{-\rho(0, w)}) \sinh \frac{1}{2} \rho(z, w).
\]

We apply this formula with \( z = F_{n-1}(0) \) and \( w = F_n(0) \). Let \( k > 0 \) be such that \( \rho(0, f_n(0)) < k \) for every positive integer \( n \) (as there are only finitely many different maps \( f_n \)). Then \( \rho(F_{n-1}(0), F_n(0)) < k \) for each integer \( n \). Therefore

\[
|F_{n-1}(0) - F_n(0)| < 2 \sinh \frac{1}{2} k(\exp(-\rho(0, F_{n-1}(0))) + \exp(-\rho(0, F_n(0)))).
\]

Theorem 5.5 tells us that \( F_n \) is of convergence type, so we can see that \( \sum |F_{n-1}(0) - F_n(0)| < +\infty \). It follows that \( F_1(0), F_2(0), \ldots \) converges in the Euclidean metric on \( \mathbb{B}^3 \). This sequence cannot converge to a point in \( \mathbb{B}^3 \), because \( F_n \) is an escaping sequence. Therefore \( F_n \) converges ideally.

Let us now go back to thinking about \( F_n \) acting on \( \overline{C} \) and \( \mathbb{H}^3 \). We have seen that \( F_n \) converges ideally to a point \( p \). This point \( p \) must belong to \( \mathbb{D} \) because the orbit \( F_n(j) \) is constrained within the Euclidean interior of \( \Pi \).

It remains to show that \( F_n \) converges locally uniformly to \( p \) on \( \mathbb{D} \setminus X \), where \( X \) is the finite set \( X = \{ u_f \in \partial \mathbb{D} \mid f_n = f \text{ for infinitely many integers } n \} \). To prove this, we first note that it follows from Theorem 1.4 that \( F_n \) converges locally uniformly to \( p \) on the complement of its backward limit set. In our circumstances, the backward limit set is contained in the complement of \( \mathbb{D} \). Therefore \( F_n \) converges locally uniformly to \( p \) on \( \mathbb{D} \).

Let us choose \( q \in \overline{\mathbb{B}} \setminus X \). Then there is a compact subset \( K \) of \( \mathbb{D} \) such that \( f(q) \in K \) for all \( f \in \mathcal{F} \). By increasing the size of \( K \) slightly (still a compact subset of \( \mathbb{D} \)) we can assume that there is an open Euclidean disc \( Q \) centred on \( q \) that does not intersect \( X \) such
that $f(Q) \subseteq K$ for all $f \in \mathcal{F}$. It follows that $F_n$ converges locally uniformly to $p$ on the complement of $X$ in $\overline{D}$, as required. \qed
CHAPTER 6

Coding limit sets

This contents of this chapter are work in progress, and the author expects that some results are likely to hold in a more general setting than the one described here.

Consider the semigroup generated by the two parabolic transformations \( f_0(z) = z + 1 \) and \( f_1(z) = \frac{z}{z+1} \) in Aut(\( \mathbb{H}^2 \)). Then the forward limit set is equal to the interval \([0, \infty] \subseteq \mathbb{R}\). Moreover for every irrational number \( x \) in \([0, \infty]\) there is a unique composition sequence generated by \( f_0 \) and \( f_1 \) that converges ideally to \( x \). Indeed, any composition sequence that converges ideally to a point \( x \) is essentially the usual continued fraction expansion of \( x \) of the form

\[
x = a_1 + \frac{1}{a_2 + \frac{1}{a_3 + \cdots}}.
\]

In this chapter we consider semigroups such that, for some points in the semigroup’s forward limit set (and as we shall see, most points), there exists more than one composition sequence that converges ideally to that point. Both for ease of analysis and exposition we work with a narrow class of semigroup. We choose two loxodromic elements \( f_0 \) and \( f_1 \) in Aut(\( \mathbb{D} \)), such that the set of attracting fixed points \( \{\alpha_{f_0}, \alpha_{f_1}\} \) does not meet the set of repelling fixed points \( \{\beta_{f_0}, \beta_{f_1}\} \), and both repelling fixed points lie in the same component of \( S^1 \setminus \{\alpha_{f_0}, \alpha_{f_1}\} \). Let \( \sigma_v \) denote a reflection in the imaginary axis and let \( \sigma_h \) denote a reflection in the real axis. The axes of \( f_0 \) and \( f_1 \) either meet in \( \mathbb{D} \), or not.

In both cases we can conjugate the semigroup such that the axes of the generators enjoy the following symmetries: both axes \( \text{ax}(f_0) \) and \( \text{ax}(f_1) \) are fixed setwise by \( \sigma_h \), and \( \sigma_v \) transposes \( \text{ax}(f_0) \) and \( \text{ax}(f_1) \). Examples of the two cases are shown in Figure 6.1. In both
cases the connected component of $S^1 \setminus \{\alpha_{f_0}, \alpha_{f_1}\}$ that does not contain either $\beta_{f_0}$ or $\beta_{f_1}$, shown in red, is mapped strictly within itself by both generators. Hence $S$ is semidiscrete and inverse free by Theorem 2.5 and the forward limit set is contained in the red interval, by Theorem 1.8 applied to $S^{-1}$. Similarly it follows that, in both cases, the backward limit set of $S$ is contained in the blue interval.

**Figure 6.1.** Possible configurations for the axes of $f_0$ and $f_1$

Let $S$ be the semigroup generated by $f_0$ and $f_1$. Let $\{0, 1\}^\omega$ denote the set of all sequences taking values in $\{0, 1\}$, and let $\{0, 1\}^n$ denote the set of all functions from $\{0, 1, \ldots, n-1\}$ to $\{0, 1\}$. We write

$$\{0, 1\}^\omega = \bigcup_{n=0}^{\infty} \{0, 1\}^n$$

as the set of all finite sequences taking values in $\{0, 1\}$. In a similar manner to the proof of Lemma 4.22, we endow $\{0, 1\}^{<\omega}$ with the usual partial order relation; that is for $i, j \in \{0, 1\}^\omega$ then $i \leq j$ if and only if the domain of $i$ is contained in the domain of $j$ and $i$ agrees with $j$ on the domain of $i$. Hence we can regard $\{0, 1\}^{<\omega}$ as a tree.

For any $i \in \{0, 1\}^{<\omega}$ with domain $\{0, 1, \ldots, n-1\}$ we write $|i| = n$. For any $m \leq |i|$ we let $i \upharpoonright m = (i_0, \ldots, i_{m-1})$ be the restriction of $i$ to $\{0, 1, \ldots, m-1\}$. For any $i \in \{0, 1\}^n$ we abbreviate the composition sequence $f_{i_0} \cdots f_{i_{n-1}}$ to $F_i$, and we define $F_0$ to be the identity. For $i$ and $j$ in $\{0, 1\}^{<\omega}$ we let $i, j$ denote the concatenation of $i$ and $j$. We call the elements $(i_0, \ldots, i_{|i|-1}, 0)$ and $(i_0, \ldots, i_{|i|-1}, 1)$ in $\{0, 1\}^{<\omega}$ the children of $i = (i_0, \ldots, i_{|i|-1})$.

Let $X$ denote the closed interval in $S^1$ bounded by the attracting fixed points of the generators that does not contain the generators’ repelling fixed points. Since $S$ is semidiscrete
and inverse free it follows from Theorem 4.18 that for any $i \in \{0, 1\}^\omega$ the composition sequence with $n^{th}$ term $F_{i|n} = f_{i_0} \cdots f_{i_{n-1}}$ converges ideally to a point, which we shall denote by $x(i)$. It follows from Theorem 1.1 that the sequence $F_{i|n}(X)$ converges to the singleton $\{x(i)\}$. Indeed, $F_{i|n}(X)$ is a decreasing nest of sets since $F_{i|n}$ is a composition sequence. If for $i \in \{0, 1\}^\omega$ the sequence $F_{i|n}$ converges ideally to $x$, we say $i$ is an address of $x$. Theorem 4.18 also tells us that each point in the forward limit set is the limit point of some composition sequence generated by $F$. In other words, each point in $\Lambda^+$ has an address. Let $Y$ denote the set $f_0(X) \cap f_1(X)$, and let us write $a = \alpha_{f_0}$ and $b = \alpha_{f_1}$. If $Y$ is empty then each point in $\Lambda^+$ has a unique address, as is the case in the familiar Cantor semigroup (although, strictly speaking, the Cantor semigroup is not an example of the type of semigroup we consider here as its generators’ repelling fixed points coincide).

Since $X$ is forward invariant under $S$, the forward limit set is certainly contained within $X$, and indeed $\Lambda^+ = X$ if and only if $Y$ is not empty. As we shall refer to them frequently, for any $j \in \{0, 1\}_{<\omega}$ we abbreviate $F_j(X)$ as $X_j$ and $F_j(Y)$ as $Y_j$.

In this chapter we focus on the case where $Y$ has a nonempty interior, and so each point $x \in X$ has some address, which is not necessarily unique. We shall classify points in $S^1$ by how many addresses they have. Clearly any point not in $X$ has no address, while the points $a$ and $b$ always have exactly one address.

For a cardinal $\kappa$ we define $E_\kappa$ as the set of $x \in S^1$ such that the set of addresses for $x$ has cardinality $\kappa$. We write $E_{<\kappa}$ as the set of $z \in S^1$ such that $\{i \in \{0, 1\}^\omega \mid x(i) = z\}$ has cardinality less than $\kappa$. The sets $E_{>\kappa}$ and $E_{\leq \kappa}$ are similarly defined. Our first goal is to show that the set of points in $X$ with infinitely many addresses, that is $E_{\geq \aleph_0}$, is a ‘topologically large set’. Towards this we first give another description of $E_{\geq \aleph_0}$. Recall that we say a branch of a tree is cofinal if it intersects every level of the tree.

**Lemma 6.1.** Let $f_0$ and $f_1$ be two loxodromic elements in $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ that are not antiparallel, and let $X$ and $Y$ be the sets described above, which depend on $f_0$ and $f_1$. If $Y$ is non-empty, then $\Lambda^+((f_0, f_1)) = X$. If $Y$ has a non-empty interior, then the set of points in $X$
with infinitely many addresses is given by
\[
E_{\geq \aleph_0} = \left\{ x \in X \mid \{ i \in \{0,1\}^{\leq \omega} \mid F_i^{-1}(x) \in Y \right\}
\]
\[
= \bigcap_{n=0}^{\infty} \bigcup_{k=n}^{\infty} F_i(Y).
\]

**Proof.** If \( Y \) is non-empty then \( X = f_0(X) \cup f_1(X) \), so that for each \( x \in X \) there exists \( j \in \{0,1\} \) such that \( x \in f_j(X) \). Hence we can recursively choose \( i \in \{0,1\}^{\omega} \) such that \( f_{n-1} \cdots f_1 f_0^{-1}(x) \in X \), that is \( x \in f_0 f_1 \cdots f_{n-1}(X) \) for each \( n \in \mathbb{N} \). The composition sequence \( f_0 f_1 \cdots f_{n-1} = F_{i|n} \) converges ideally, and since \( X \) does not meet \( \Lambda^- \) this convergence is uniform on \( X \). Since \( x \in F_{i|n}(X) \) for all \( n \), it follows that \( F_{i|n} \) converges ideally to \( x \), and in particular, \( x \) lies in the forward limit set of \( \langle f_0, f_1 \rangle \). Hence \( \Lambda^+(\langle f_0, f_1 \rangle) = X \) as claimed.

Now suppose that \( Y \) has non-empty interior. Given each \( x \in X \) let \( T(x) \) be the set of \( i \in \{0,1\}^{\omega} \) such that \( F_i^{-1}(x) \in X \). \( T(x) \) is a tree, since for \( i \in T(x) \), \( X_i \subseteq X_{i|n} \) for each \( n = 0, 1, \ldots, \|i\| \). Furthermore, as \( Y = f_0(X) \cap f_1(X) \), if \( i \) belongs to \( T(x) \), then both its children also belong to \( T(x) \) if and only if \( F_i^{-1}(x) \in Y \). The tree \( T(x) \) has infinitely many vertices since \( x \) has at least one address. If only finitely many vertices of \( T(x) \) have two children, then as a subtree of \( \{0,1\}^{\leq \omega} \), \( T(x) \) has only finitely many cofinal branches. Conversely if infinitely many vertices in \( T(x) \) have two children, then \( T(x) \) has infinitely many cofinal branches. It follows that \( E_{\geq \aleph_0} = \{ x \in X \mid \{ i \in \{0,1\}^{\leq \omega} \mid F_i^{-1}(x) \in Y \} \) is infinite \}. Finally we observe that
\[
\bigcap_{n=0}^{\infty} \bigcup_{k=n}^{\infty} F_i(Y)
\]
is simply a set-theoretic description of \( \{ x \in X \mid \{ i \in \{0,1\}^{\leq \omega} \mid F_i^{-1}(x) \in Y \} \) is infinite \}. 

\[ \square \]

In fact it can be shown that for any subtree of \( \{0,1\}^{\omega} \), there are either finitely many, countably infinitely many or continuum many cofinal branches. For \( x \in X \), the tree \( T(x) \) from the proof of Lemma 6.1 is a subtree of \( \{0,1\}^{\omega} \), and so \( x \) either has finitely, countably infinitely many or continuum many addresses. Hence \( E_\kappa \) is nonempty only for \( \kappa \) finite,
Recall from Section 2.1 in Chapter 4 that a subset of a topological space is meagre if it is the countable union of nowhere dense sets. A residual set is the complement of a meagre set. Meagre sets are ‘topologically small’ sets – they form a \( \sigma \)-ideal, and so residual sets can be regarded as ‘topologically large’ sets.

**Corollary 6.2.** Let \( f_0 \) and \( f_1 \) be two loxodromic elements in \( \text{Aut}(D) \) that are not antiparallel, and let \( X \) be the set described above, that is the closed interval bounded by \( \alpha f_0 \) and \( \alpha f_1 \) that does not contain \( \beta f_0 \) or \( \beta f_1 \). Then \( E_{\geq \aleph_0} \) is a residual subset of \( X \).

**Proof.** Since \( Y \) is a proper interval, \( E_{\geq \aleph_0} \) contains the \( G_\delta \) set

\[
U = \bigcap_{n=0}^{\infty} \bigcup_{k=n}^{\infty} \bigcup_{i \in \{0,1\}^k} F_i(Y^o),
\]

where \( Y^o \) is the interior of \( Y \). Since

\[
\bigcup_{k=n}^{\infty} \bigcup_{i \in \{0,1\}^k} F_i(Y^o)
\]

is open and dense in \( X \), it follows from the Baire category theorem that \( U \) is dense in \( X \), and so \( E_{\geq \aleph_0} \) contains a dense \( G_\delta \) subset of \( X \). It follows that \( E_{\geq \aleph_0} \) is a residual set. \( \square \)

Recall the chordal metric defined in Equation 1 in Chapter 5. We next record two distortion results, which can be found in [34, Equation 1.3.2] and [34, Theorem 1.3.4], that we shall need again.

**Lemma 6.3.** In the disc model, for any Möbius transformation \( g \) fixing the unit disc and any points \( z \) and \( w \) in \( \mathbb{S}^1 \), we have

\[
|g(z) - g(w)| = |g^\#(z)|^{1/2} |g^\#(w)|^{1/2}
\]

and

\[
|g^\#(z)| = \frac{1 - |g(0)|^2}{|z - g^{-1}(0)|^2}.
\]
The following notation will be useful in what follows. For two sequences of positive real numbers, \( x_n \) and \( y_n \), for \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), we write \( x_n \asymp y_n \) if there exists positive real constants \( A \) and \( B \) such that \( A \leq x_n/y_n \leq B \) for all large enough \( n \).

**Lemma 6.4.** We have \( |X_j| \asymp |Y_j| \) over all \( j \in \{0, 1\}^{<\omega} \).

**Proof.** This statement depends on the fact that the backward and forward limit sets of \( S = \langle f_0, f_1 \rangle \) are disjoint.

Since \( |X_j| = |F_j(a) - F_j(b)| \) we obtain

\[
(25) \quad |X_j| = \frac{(1 - |F_j(0)|^2)|X|}{|F_j^{-1}(0) - a||F_j^{-1}(0) - b|}
\]

upon combining \( (23) \) and \( (24) \).

Similarly, we have

\[
|Y_j| = \frac{(1 - |F_j(0)|^2)|Y|}{|F_j^{-1}(0) - f_1(a)||F_j^{-1}(0) - f_0(b)|}
\]

and so

\[
\frac{|Y_j|}{|X_j|} = \frac{|Y||F_j^{-1}(0) - a||F_j^{-1}(0) - b|}{|X||F_j^{-1}(0) - f_1(a)||F_j^{-1}(0) - f_0(b)|}.
\]

Since the points \( a, b, f_1(a) \) and \( f_0(b) \) do not lie in the backward limit set of \( S \), each term in the numerator and denominator of the right-hand side is bounded away from 0, uniformly over all \( j \in \{0, 1\}^{<\omega} \). \( \square \)

Corollary 6.2 shows that the set of \( x \in X \) that have infinitely many addresses is topologically a large set. The next theorem shows that this set is large in a measure theoretic sense too. For any \( x \in \mathbb{C} \) and \( r > 0 \) we shall use the notation \( B_x(r) \) to denote the Euclidean open ball centred at \( x \) and of radius \( r \). We let \( \mu \) denote the Lebesgue measure on \( S^1 \), normalised so that \( \mu(S^1) = 1 \).

**Theorem 6.5.** Let \( f_0 \) and \( f_1 \) be two loxodromic elements in \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{D}) \) that are not antiparallel, and let \( X \) and \( Y \) be the sets described above, which depend on \( f_0 \) and \( f_1 \). If \( Y \) is non-empty, then \( \mu(E_{\geq n_0}) = \mu(X) \).
Proof. By Lemma 6.1 we have
\[ X \setminus E_{\geq \aleph_0} = \bigcup_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( X \setminus \bigcup_{k=n}^{\infty} Y_i \right). \]
We write
\[ Q_n = X \setminus \bigcup_{k=n}^{\infty} Y_i \]
and show that each \( Q_n \) has zero measure. Suppose towards contradiction that some \( Q_n \) has positive measure, then by the Lebesgue density theorem 4.7 there exists \( x \in Q_n \) such that
\[ \lim_{r \to 0} \frac{\mu(Q_n \cap B_x(r))}{\mu(B_x(r))} = 1. \]
Since \( x \) lies in \( X \), \( x \) has at least one address and so we can choose some \( i \in \{0, 1\}^\omega \) such that \( x = x(i) \). For each positive integer \( m \) we write \( r_m = |X_i|m| \). Since \( x(i) \in X_i|m| \) we have \( Y_{i|m} \subseteq X_{i|m} \subset B_x(r_m) \) for all \( m \geq n \). Since \( Q_n \subseteq X \setminus Y_{i|m} \) and \( \mu(B_x(r_m)) = 2|X_i|m| \) we have
\[ \frac{\mu(Q_n \cap B_x(r_m))}{\mu(B_x(r_m))} \leq \frac{2|X_i|m| - |Y_{i|m}|}{2|X_i|m|} \]
for all \( m \geq n \). By Lemma 6.4 there is some constant \( c > 0 \) such that for all \( m \) we have \( |Y_{i|m}|/|X_i|m| \geq c \). Hence
\[ \frac{\mu(Q_n \cap B_x(r_m))}{\mu(B_x(r_m))} \leq 1 - \frac{c}{2} \]
for all \( m \geq n \). Upon taking the limit as \( m \to \infty \), we obtain a contradiction with (26), and so \( Q_n \) must have zero measure after all. □

Lemma 6.6. Let \( f_0 \) and \( f_1 \) be two loxodromic elements in \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{D}) \) that are not antiparallel, then we have
\[ E_{\geq \aleph_0} = f_0(E_{\geq \aleph_0}) \cup f_1(E_{\geq \aleph_0}). \]

Proof. First suppose \( z \in E_{\geq \aleph_0} \), that is \( z \) has uncountably many addresses. This means that there is an uncountable set \( C \subseteq \{0, 1\}^\omega \) such that for all \( i \in C \) we have \( z = x((i_0, \ldots, i_n, \ldots)) \). Hence for \( j = 0, 1 \) we have \( f_j(z) = x((j, i_0, \ldots, i_n, \ldots)) \) for all \( i \in C \). This means that \( f_j(z) \in E_{\geq \aleph_0} \) and so \( E_{\geq \aleph_0} \supseteq f_0(E_{\geq \aleph_0}) \cup f_1(E_{\geq \aleph_0}) \). Conversely,
again suppose \( z \in E_{>\aleph_0} \) so that there is an uncountable set \( C \subseteq \{0, 1\}^\omega \), such that for all \( i \in C \) we have \( z = x((i_0, \ldots, i_n, \ldots)) \). By the pigeon-hole principle, either \( i_0 = 0 \) or \( i_0 = 1 \) for uncountably many \( i \in C \); hence either \( f_0^{-1}(z) \in E_{>\aleph_0} \) or \( f_1^{-1}(z) \in E_{>\aleph_0} \). In other words \( z \in f_0(E_{>\aleph_0}) \cup f_1(E_{>\aleph_0}) \).

**Theorem 6.7.** Let \( f_0 \) and \( f_1 \) be two loxodromic elements in \( \text{Aut}(D) \) that are not antiparallel, and let \( X \) and \( Y \) be the sets described above, which depend on \( f_0 \) and \( f_1 \). If \( Y \) is non-empty and \( E_{>\aleph_0} \) is measurable, then either \( \mu(E_{>\aleph_0}) = \mu(X) \) or \( \mu(E_{\aleph_0}) = \mu(X) \).

**Proof.** By Lemma 6.1 we have \( X = \Lambda^+ \), and since the forward and backward limit sets are disjoint, \( \Lambda^+ = \Lambda^+_c \) by Theorem 4.18. Furthermore, by Lemma 6.6, \( E_{>\aleph_0} \) is forward invariant. Notice that \( E_{\leq\aleph_0} \) is backward invariant since \( E_{>\aleph_0} \) is forward invariant. Hence it follows from Lemma 4.8 (applied to \( S^{-1} \) rather than \( S \)) that \( \mu(\Lambda^+_c \cap E_{\leq\aleph_0}) > 0 \) implies \( \mu(E_{\leq\aleph_0}) = 1 \). That is if \( \mu(X \cap E_{\leq\aleph_0}) > 0 \), then \( \mu(X \cap E_{\leq\aleph_0}) = \mu(X) \), and so \( \mu(E_{\aleph_0}) = \mu(X) \) by Theorem 6.5. Now either \( \mu(X \cap E_{\aleph_0}) > 0 \) so that \( \mu(E_{\aleph_0}) = \mu(X) \), otherwise \( \mu(X \cap E_{\aleph_0}) = 0 \), and so \( \mu(E_{\aleph_0}) = 0 \) since \( E_{\aleph_0} \subseteq X \).

If \( S \) is not free then we shall show that \( E_{>\aleph_0} \) is not empty. When \( Y = f_0(X) \cap f_1(X) \) has empty interior the semigroup \( S = \langle f_0, f_1 \rangle \) is free. We show that for at least some choices of \( f_0 \) and \( f_1 \), \( S \) is not free. We go on to show that whenever \( S \) is not free, \( \mu(E_{>\aleph_0}) = \mu(X) \).

We first observe that by conjugating, we can ensure that the axes of the generators are symmetrical about both the real and imaginary axes, as shown in Figure 6.1. Hence there are only three variables in \( \mathbb{R}^+ \) that determine \( S \) up to conjugation: the distance between the axes of the generators and the two translation lengths of the generators. Let \( \ell_h \) and \( \ell_v \) denote the geodesics contained in the horizontal and vertical axes respectively. Let \( \sigma_h \) and \( \sigma_v \) denote the reflections in \( \ell_h \) and \( \ell_v \) respectively. If \( w \) is the element

\[ w = (i_0, \ldots, i_{n-1}) \]

in \( \{0, 1\}^{<\omega} \) then we let \( w^* \) denote the element obtained from \( w \) by changing each instance of 0 to 1 and each instance of 1 to 0. That is

\[ w^* = (1 - i_0, \ldots, 1 - i_{n-1}). \]**
We let \( w^\dagger \) be the element obtained from \( w \) by reversing the order of each letter of \( w \). That is
\[
    w^\dagger = (i_{n-1}, \ldots, i_0).
\]
We say that an element \( w \) in \( \{0, 1\}^{<\omega} \) is palindromic if \( w = w^\dagger \). For a loxodromic element \( g \), we let \( \text{Ax}(g) \) denote the axis of \( g \) with its direction marked. This is in contrast with the notation \( \text{ax}(g) \), which denotes the axis of \( g \) as a set.

**Lemma 6.8.** If \( w \) is an element in \( \{0, 1\}^{<\omega} \), then
\[
    \sigma_h F_w \sigma_h = F_w^{-1}. \quad \text{Moreover, if } f_0 \text{ and } f_1 \text{ have the same translation lengths, then } \sigma_v F_w \sigma_v = F_{w^*}. \]

**Proof.** By considering the action of \( \sigma_h f_i \sigma_h \) on the point of intersection of \( \text{ax}(f_i) \) and \( \ell_h \) we see that \( \sigma_h f_i \sigma_h = f_i^{-1} \) for \( i = 0, 1 \). Hence the first statement follows upon observing that if \( g = f_{i_1} f_{i_2} \cdots f_{i_{n-1}} f_{i_n} \) then
\[
    \sigma_h g \sigma_h = (\sigma_h f_{i_1} \sigma_h)(\sigma_h f_{i_2} \sigma_h) \cdots (\sigma_h f_{i_{n-1}} \sigma_h)(\sigma_h f_{i_n} \sigma_h).
\]
The second statement is similar. Noting that both generators have the same translation length and considering, for example, the action of \( \sigma_v f_i \sigma_v \) on the intersection point of \( \text{ax}(f_1^{-i}) \) and \( \ell_h \), we see that \( \sigma_v f_0 \sigma_v = f_{1-i} \). \( \square \)

Suppose now that the generators have equal translation lengths and \( g \) is an element of \( S \) such that \( g = F_w \) for some palindromic element \( w \) in \( \{0, 1\}^{<\omega} \), and write \( g^* = F_{w^*} \). For example \( g \) could be \( f_0 f_1 f_0 \), and so \( g^* = f_1 f_0 f_1 \). A consequence of the first statement in the lemma is that \( \text{Ax}(g) = \sigma_h (\text{Ax}(g^{-1})) \). It follows that \( \text{Ax}(g) \) is orthogonal to \( \ell_h \). Similarly, by the second statement in the lemma we see that \( \text{Ax}(g) = \sigma_v (\text{Ax}(g^*)) \). Figure 6.2 shows an example in the case where the axes of \( f_0 \) and \( f_1 \) do not meet.

Since \( \sigma_v g \sigma_v = g^* \) it follows that \( g \) and \( g^* \) have the same translation lengths. This means that if we can find \( g \) induced by a palindromic element \( w \) such that \( w \neq w^* \) and whose axis is equal to \( \ell_h \), then \( g \in S \) is induced by at least two different elements of \( \{0, 1\}^{<\omega} \), and so \( S \) is not a free semigroup. Towards this, we consider varying the common translation length \( \tau \) of the generators, and consider \( g \) and \( g^* \) as dependant on \( \tau \). Choose \( \tau \) small enough such that \( f_0(b) \) is in the right half-plane. Now choose \( n \) large enough such that \( f_1^n f_0(0) \) is
close enough to \( f_0(b) \) (where \( b \) is the attracting fixed point of \( f_1 \)) such that \( f_0 f_1^n f_0(0) \) is in the right half-plane, and close to the ideal boundary. It follows that the attracting fixed point of \( f_0 f_1^n f_0 \) is in the right half-plane. We put \( g_n = f_0 f_1^n f_0 \) and conclude that the axis of \( g_n \) is contained in the right half-plane. Now, with \( n \) fixed, we see that as \( \tau \) tends to \( \infty \) the attracting fixed point of \( g_n \) converges to \( a \), the attracting fixed point of \( f_0 \). Hence for large \( \tau \), the axis of \( g \) is in the left half-plane. Since the attracting and repelling fixed points of \( g \) vary continuously with \( \tau \) we see by the intermediate value theorem that for some \( \tau \) the axis of \( g \) coincides with \( \ell_v \). In this case we must have \( g = g^* \) as \( g \) and \( g^* \) have the same translation lengths. Since \( w \) and \( w^* \) are distinct and \( g = F_w = F_{w^*} \), we see that \( S \) is not a free semigroup.

The above example of a semigroup that is not free was found by relying on symmetry; we do not know if a ‘typical’ choice of \( f_0 \) and \( f_1 \) gives rise to a semigroup that is not free. However, whenever a semigroup is not free, we shall see that the set of points in \( X \) with \( 2^{\aleph_0} \)-many addresses has the same measure as \( X \).

For any \( p \) in \( \{0,1\}^{<\omega} \), let \( A(p) \) be the set of points \( x \in X \) such that every address for \( x \) eventually avoids \( p \). That is, \( A(p) \) is the set of those \( x \) in \( X \) with the property that for all \( i \in \{0,1\}^{\omega} \) such that \( x(i) = x \), we have \( (i_{n+1}, \ldots, i_{n+|p|}) = p \) for only finitely many \( n \in \mathbb{N} \). Recall that for \( i \) and \( j \) in \( \{0,1\}^{<\omega} \) we let \( i, j \) denote the concatenation of \( i \) and \( j \).

**Lemma 6.9.** For every \( p \) in \( \{0,1\}^{<\omega} \), the set \( A(p) \) has measure zero.
Proof. The proof is very similar to that of Theorem 6.5. We let $A_m(p)$ denote the set of points $x \in X$ such that every address of $x$ avoids $p$ after $m$ letters. That is, if $x = x(i)$ for some $i \in \{0, 1\}^\omega$, then $i \upharpoonright m$, that is $(i_0, \ldots, i_{m-1})$, does not contain $p$. Hence

$$A_m(p) = X \setminus \bigcup_{i \in \{0, 1\}^m, j \in \{0, 1\}^{<\omega}} X_{i,j,p}.$$ 

We now suppose towards contradiction that $A_m(p)$ has positive measure, so that by the Lebesgue density theorem there exists a point $x \in A_m(p)$ such that

$$\lim_{r \to 0} \frac{\mu(A_m(p) \cap B_x(r))}{\mu(B_x(r))} = 1,$$

where as before, $B_x(r)$ is the ball of radius $r$ centred at $x$. Choose some address $i$ of $x$.

For each positive integer $n$ we write $r_n = |X_i^{[n]}|$. Since $x(i) \in X_i^{[n]}$ we have, for all $n \geq m$, $X_{i,n,p} \subseteq X_i^{[n]} \subset B_x(r_n)$. Hence we have

$$\frac{\mu(A_m(p) \cap B_x(r_n))}{\mu(B_x(r_n))} \leq \frac{2|X_i^{[n]}| - |X_{i,n,p}|}{2|X_i^{[n]}|}$$

for all $n \geq m$. We claim there is a constant $c > 0$ such that for all $n$ we have $|X_{i,n,p}|/|X_i^{[n]}| \geq c$. Assume for now the claim is true, then

$$\frac{\mu(A_m(p) \cap B_x(r_n))}{\mu(B_x(r_n))} \leq 1 - \frac{c}{2}$$

for all $n \geq m$. Upon taking the limit as $n \to \infty$, we obtain a contradiction with (27), and so $A_m(p)$ must have zero measure after all. It follows that

$$A(p) = \bigcup_{m \in \omega} A_m(p)$$

also has zero measure.

In order to verify the constant $c$ exists as claimed, we apply equation (25) from the proof of Lemma 6.4 to give

$$\frac{|X_{i,n,p}|}{|X_i^{[n]}|} \asymp \frac{1 - |F_{i,n,p}(0)|^2}{1 - |F_i^{[n]}(0)|^2}.$$ 

In the disc model, for any $x \in \mathbb{D}$ we have

$$\rho(0, x) = \log \left( \frac{1 + |x|}{1 - |x|} \right)$$
CODING LIMIT SETS

(see for example Section 1.6), and so \(\exp[-\rho(0, x)] \approx 1 - |x|\) as \(x\) runs along any sequence of points tending to the ideal boundary. Moreover, for any Möbius transformations \(F\) and \(g\) we have \(\rho(Fg(0), 0) = \rho(g(0), F^{-1}(0))\)

\[
\rho(F^{-1}(0), 0) - \rho(f(0), 0) \leq \rho(g(0), F^{-1}(0)) \leq \rho(F^{-1}(0), 0) + \rho(f(0), 0).
\]

It follows that as \(n \to \infty\),

\[
1 - |F_i |n(0)|^2 \approx \exp[-\rho(F_i |n(0), 0)] \approx \exp[-\rho(F_i |n,p(0), 0)] \approx 1 - |F_i |n,p(0)|^2.
\]

It follows that \(|X_i |n,p|/|X_i |n|\) is bounded between two positive real numbers for all large enough \(n\), and so the constant \(c\) exists as claimed. □

**Lemma 6.10.** Suppose \(S\) is not free, say for some distinct \(p\) and \(q\) in \(\{0, 1\}^{\omega}\) we have \(F_p = F_q\). Then, for any \(i \in \{0, 1\}^{\omega}\) that does not eventually avoid \(p\), the point \(x(i)\) in \(S\) has \(2^{\aleph_0}\)-many addresses; that is, \(x(i) \in E_{2^{\aleph_0}}\).

**Proof.** Suppose \(i \in \{0, 1\}^{\omega}\) takes the form \(i = j_1, p, j_2, p, \ldots, j_n, p, \ldots\) where each \(j_k \in \{0, 1\}^{\omega}\). This representation need not be unique, and possibly some \(j_k\) have length 0. For any \(k \in \{0, 1\}^{\omega}\) consider the element \(i(k) \in \{0, 1\}^{\omega}\) obtained from \(i\) by replacing the instance of \(p\) immediately after \(j_n\) with \(q\) if \(k(n) = 1\); otherwise we leave it as \(p\). If the lengths \(|p|\) and \(|q|\) of \(p\) and \(q\) (respectively) are equal, it is clear that the map \(k \mapsto i(k)\) is one-to-one. Next consider the case where these lengths are not equal, say \(|p| < |q|\).

Suppose towards contradiction that \(k \mapsto i(k)\) is not one-to-one, say \(k\) and \(k'\) are distinct elements in \(\{0, 1\}^{\omega}\) and yet \(i(k) = i(k')\). If \(m\) is the least positive integer such that \(k(m)\) disagrees with \(k'(m)\), then we have

\[
j_1, \ldots, j_m, p, \ldots = j_1, \ldots, j_m, q, \ldots
\]

In particular \(q \upharpoonright |p| = p\), but then as \(F_q = F_p\) we have \(I = f_q |p| \cdots f_q |q|^{-1}\), which is impossible. Hence in all cases, the map \(k \mapsto i(k)\) is one-to-one. It follows that there are \(2^{\aleph_0}\)-many addresses for \(x(i)\). □

The discussion following Lemma 6.8 shows that there exist choices of \(f_0\) and \(f_1\) such that \(S\) is not free. The next theorem tells us that, for such semigroups, almost every point in \(X\) has \(2^{\aleph_0}\)-many addresses.
Theorem 6.11. If $S = \langle f_0, f_1 \rangle$ is not free, then $E_{2^{\aleph_0}}$ has the same measure as $X$.

Proof. As $S$ is not free, there are distinct $p$ and $q$ in $\{0, 1\}^{<\omega}$ such that $F_p = F_q$. By Lemma 6.9 the set of points for which every address eventually avoids the block $p$ has measure zero. Hence $X \setminus A(p)$, the set of points in $X$ for which there exists some address that contains infinitely many instances of the block $p$, has the same measure as $X$. By Lemma 6.10 $X \setminus A(p)$ is contained in $E_{2^{\aleph_0}}$, and so $E_{2^{\aleph_0}}$ also has the same measure as $X$. □

Although the theorem above can be generalised to higher dimensions, it is not clear that it can be generalised to cases where $\Lambda^+(S)$ has non-integer Hausdorff dimension; for if $s$ is the non-integer Hausdorff dimension of $\Lambda^+$, then the direct analogue of the Lebesgue density theorem fails spectacularly when $\Lambda^+$ has finite and nonzero $s$-measure.
Bibliography


159


